Chapter 1: Parts of Speech Overview, pp. 1–25

Common, Proper, Concrete, and Abstract Nouns, p. 1

EXERCISE

- 1. A constitution may have a bill of rights.
- **2.** The Constitution of the United States guarantees freedom of speech.
- **3.** The Works Progress Administration existed during the Great Depression.
- **4.** That candidate is a staunch supporter of a republican form of government.
- **5.** The Articles of Confederation were approved in 1781.
- **6.** This document established "a firm league of friendship" among the states.
- **7.** The editorial in today's <u>newspaper</u> defended the proposed amendment.
- **8.** The <u>Supreme Court</u> can decide cases involving public officials.
- **9.** Have you read the most recent book about the trial of <u>Aaron Burr</u>?
- **10.** He was tried for treason.

Compound Nouns and Collective Nouns, p. 2

EXERCISE A

- **1.** coll
- **5.** coll
- 8. comp

- 2. comp
- **6.** coll
- 9. coll

- **3.** comp
- **7.** comp
- **10.** comp

4. coll

EXERCISE B

- **11.** How many players are on a <u>team</u> in <u>baseball?</u>
- **12.** My <u>sister-in-law</u> plays the oboe in the local orchestra.
- **13.** The <u>crowd</u> had already sat through the two-hour speech when <u>President Lincoln</u> rose to read the Gettysburg Address.

- **14.** Leslie always lapses into <u>baby talk</u> when she sees a litter of kittens.
- **15.** The <u>band</u> included one song that sounded as if it had been recorded in an echo chamber.
- **16.** The <u>class</u> presented <u>Ms. Stockdale</u> with a <u>bouquet</u> of baby's breath.
- **17.** The TV <u>weatherperson</u> explained to the <u>audience</u> how a barometer works.
- **18.** In order to get a good <u>batch</u> of cookies, you need to use the best oatmeal available.
- **19.** A <u>school</u> of <u>killer whales</u> followed in the wake of the ship.
- **20.** The <u>bird-watchers</u> were awe-struck as the <u>flock</u> of geese lifted into the sky.

Pronouns and Antecedents, p. 3

Possessive pronouns in items 1 and 3, Ex. A, and items 14 and 15, Ex. B, also may be identified as possessive adjectives.

EXERCISE A

- **1.** If you didn't tell Mr. Attansio about his car, and I didn't, then who did?
- **2.** That pie has a nice flavor to it.
- **3.** What did she say about your new haircut?
- **4.** Nobody knows me as well as I know myself.
- **5.** <u>All of us</u> in the class wondered if <u>anyone</u> else was as amused by the film as we were.
- **6.** <u>Neither of them</u> has a question about the project.
- **7.** They repaired the truck themselves.
- **8.** Although only <u>some</u> of the students admitted <u>it</u> to <u>themselves</u>, <u>everyone</u> in the class enjoyed reading the stories.
- **9.** "These pumpkins," <u>he</u> said, "aren't nearly as large as those."

10. One piece of fruit will be enough for <u>me</u>, thank you.

EXERCISE B

- 11. The sound from the stereo was too loud, and it woke up the neighbors.
- **12.** Sometimes Virgil will eat asparagus; sometimes he won't.
- 13. First, Juan washed the car; then he waxed it.
- **14.** Uncle Bart could never bring <u>himself</u> to praise <u>his</u> sister's cooking, no matter how good it was.
- **15.** Debra handed the baby to her husband, John, who put him in the crib.

Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns, p. 4

EXERCISE A Possessive pronouns in items 2, 3, 4, 7, and 9 also may be identified as possessive adjectives.

- **1.** <u>I</u> hope that the skates are worth the money that <u>you</u> paid for <u>them</u>.
- **2.** Jared offered <u>me</u> a free ticket to <u>his</u> uncle's play.
- **3.** Mike and Zahara played their guitars, and then Ethel got her guitar and joined them.
- **4.** Our coats look so much alike that I can't tell which coat is mine and which is yours.
- **5.** Angie wrote to <u>me</u> and explained why <u>she</u> couldn't visit us this summer.
- **6.** If <u>you</u> ask <u>me</u>, Carla, <u>I</u> think <u>you</u> should take the class in lifesaving.
- **7.** After he passed the pilot's exam, he took us for a ride in his new airplane.
- **8.** Isn't <u>she</u> the person whose athletic prowess dazzled <u>us</u> during the soccer game last Saturday?
- **9.** My father loves that music by chanting monks, but it drives me crazy.

10. He blocked the pass and caught the ball himself, but as he ran down the field with it, he was brought down by a running back.

EXERCISE B

- 11. He poured himself a glass of milk.
- **12.** Somebody said that Terry designed all of intensive the costumes herself.
- **13.** You take care of <u>yourself</u>, okay?
- **14.** The cat pulled itself up the side of the sofa.
- **15.** The homeowners painted their house *intensive* themselves.

Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Relative Pronouns, p. 5

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. What is the question?
- **2.** This is the last of the paint.
- **3.** Which of the videos does Ben want to rent, this one or that?
- **4.** Those are the shoes that Lainie bought for the dance.
- **5.** Whose books are <u>these</u>?
- **6.** Mary Ellen asked the same question that Padgett did.
- **7.** The casserole that Dad made last week tasted much better than <u>this</u>.
- **8.** To whom did Dave give the birthday card?
- **9.** That is a problem which has troubled the community for many years.
- **10.** Take that, you scoundrel!

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Tom is the person that Cheryl had in mind for the job.
- **12.** Those will do quite nicely.
- **13.** Neil is the student whose photograph was in the paper during the science fair.

- **14.** Which of the flowers would work best on the homecoming float?
- **15.** This is the song performed by the choir in last night's performance.

Indefinite Pronouns, p. 6

EXERCISE A

- Much is promised to <u>someone</u> who is willing to risk <u>everything</u>.
- **2.** Knock on their door and see if <u>anybody</u> is home.
- **3.** The twins rely on themselves more than they rely on <u>anyone</u> else.
- **4.** Many tried out for the play, and the drama teacher chose almost everyone.
- **5.** Jared forgot about <u>everything</u> but his science fair project.
- **6.** Several of us are meeting her for lunch in the cafeteria.
- 7. Doesn't <u>anybody</u> here besides you speak Spanish?
- **8.** Nobody forgot to bring a backpack on the field trip.
- **9.** <u>All</u> of the members of the chess club wondered who would win the tournament this year.
- **10.** Neither of the brothers was willing to ask someone for help.

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary. Typical responses are given.

- 11. anybody
- **14.** More
- **12.** everything
- 15. someone, everyone
- **13.** Everyone

Identifying Pronouns, p. 7

EXERCISE A

The possessive pronoun in item 3 also may be identified as a possessive adjective.

- **1.** Before painting, they went to the hardware store to buy paint.
- **2.** The paint that Bryan had originally wanted for the living room was no longer available.
- **3.** Beth suggested two alternative colors, but neither matched their furniture.
- **4.** After searching for an hour, Beth found a shade of green that both of them liked.
- **5.** They returned home and quickly began preparing to paint.
- **6.** "What should we do first?" asked Bryan.
- **7.** "You can stir the paint while I put drop cloths over the furniture."
- **8.** "That is a good idea," he replied.
- **9.** Then Bryan realized <u>he</u> would also need to move some furniture in the bedroom that they intended to paint.
- **10.** As a result, Beth had to paint the entire living room herself.

Exercise B The possessive pronoun in item 12 also may be identified as a possessive adjective.

11.	indefinite	16.	reflexive

12. personal **17.** demonstrative

13. personal **18.** interrogative

14. demonstrative **19.** intensive

15. relative **20.** personal

Adjectives and the Words They Modify, p. 8

EXERCISE A

- 1. The <u>little electric</u> car chugged over <u>the steep</u> hill and into the valley.
- **2.** <u>A bitter</u> wind was blowing off <u>the</u> ocean <u>the</u> night that Keith heard the eerie howling.

- **3.** The unpublished story revealed a <u>new</u> side of Faulkner to the scholar.
- **4.** The clear view of the distant ocean was slowly obstructed by the new skyscraper.
- **5.** The gray cat stretched itself out in the warm sunshine pouring through the window.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** I heard a <u>lovely</u> piece of music on the portable radio this morning.
- **7.** The <u>red</u> telephone on the desk rang loudly, startling the maintenance worker.
- **8.** The sky is often clear this time of the year.
- **9.** The kitten playfully dug its <u>sharp</u> claws into the <u>old</u> dog, who snapped at the kitten.
- **10.** Tony can bring <u>fifteen</u> chairs to the graduation party, if you need them.
- 11. Hang the apron on the <u>little</u> hook inside the <u>pantry</u> door and put the <u>oven</u> mitt back in the left-hand drawer.
- **12.** Many people don't understand that a snowstorm can be dangerous.
- **13.** This recipe makes a <u>delicious</u> pie, but it does call for ten apples.
- **14.** Out of the <u>bedroom</u> window, Nils could see a young deer.
- **15.** Why does Mr. Ecklund always use a red pencil to mark homework assignments?

Pronoun or Adjective? p. 9

EXERCISE

- **1.** <u>Many</u> of the houses in this neighborhood were built by the same contractor.
- **2.** The freshest fruits in the store are the apples and pears, which were picked only yesterday.
- **3.** These are not the books I ordered.

- **4.** A <u>few</u> days from now, we'll be able to laugh about the situation.
- **5.** Which play are we going to see?
- **6.** Remember to seat <u>those</u> who come late at the back of the church.
- **7.** Katya enjoys most movies, though she prefers comedies.
- **8.** These old photographs were left to me by my grandmother.
- **9.** Some prefer a cold meal to a hot one.
- **10.** Those rosebushes are lovely!
- **11.** <u>Some</u> children are naturally talented at singing and playing an instrument.
- **12.** Of all the items on display, which do you prefer?
- **13.** Most of us have already been swimming today.
- **14.** Mai enjoys being out in nature more than most people do.
- **15.** Many people will be coming from out of town for the wedding.
- **16.** The symphony has three movements; <u>each</u> has a different tempo.
- **17.** Will <u>all</u> members of the squadron please report to the ready room?
- **18.** The doctor will try to see <u>all</u> of you today.
- **19.** This sort of painting is best seen in natural light.
- **20.** This is my final offer.

Noun or Adjective? p. 10

Exercise

- **1.** My mother writes a <u>newspaper</u> column once a week.
- 2. Originally, Mike's family came from Los Angeles.

- **3.** Jamal's older brother is a successful <u>record</u> producer.
- **4.** Tish has switched to a diet rich in grains, vegetables, and <u>fruit</u>.
- **5.** Colin likes all sorts of <u>music</u>, but his favorite is opera.
- **6.** Who answered the <u>telephone</u> when you called?
- **7.** Are those <u>storm</u> clouds along the horizon?
- **8.** The <u>Los Angeles</u> freeways are some of the most crowded roads in the world.
- **9.** Please refold the <u>newspaper</u> when you're finished with it.
- **10.** My older sister just received her degree in music education.
- **11.** The lecturer found a <u>fruit</u> basket in his hotel room.
- **12.** That recording of the <u>Duke Ellington</u> song "Don't Get Around Much Anymore" is classic.
- **13.** Aunt Mimi still has a lot of her old rock 'n' roll records on vinyl.
- **14.** The gale force winds of the storm caused a great deal of damage along the coast.
- **15.** The <u>launch</u> controller decided to proceed with the countdown.
- **16.** The author of my favorite <u>book</u> came to town to give a lecture.
- **17.** He did a <u>book</u> signing at the local bookstore.
- **18.** <u>Duke Ellington</u> was one of the founders of the big-band sound in jazz.
- **19.** The <u>launch</u> of a space shuttle is always spectacular.

20. If you have a complaint about your service, you should call the <u>telephone</u> company.

Main and Helping Verbs, p. 11

- 1. Mr. Okagi was working in his garden.
- **2.** I have known Gabrielle for many years.
- **3.** The Baxters <u>are building</u> a swimming pool in their backyard.
- **4.** If you <u>had been wearing</u> the mask, I <u>might</u> not <u>have recognized</u> you.
- **5.** Where did she say the ladder should go?
- **6.** Some friends of Caitlin's <u>are having</u> a party next Saturday night.
- **7.** Would you like an invitation?
- **8.** <u>Had I known</u> about the concert earlier, I would have gone with you.
- **9.** Randall should know that his supervisor might ask him for an explanation of his absences.
- **10.** Will you or will you not join the dance?
- 11. Can a dog that small jump that high?
- **12.** Rafiq <u>had known</u> about the change in schedule as early as last week.
- **13.** I <u>would help</u> you carry the sofa, but as you can see, my hands are full already.
- **14.** After they <u>had been eliminated</u> in the first round of the championship, the team's ride home on the bus <u>was</u> very quiet.
- **15.** He <u>should have</u> <u>written</u> his answers to the assignment yesterday.
- **16.** We <u>are</u> always <u>singing</u> Nedra's praises.
- **17.** <u>Have</u> they <u>lived</u> in the house very long?
- **18.** While the carpenter is working in one room of the new house, the plumber is finishing up in another room.

- **19.** If Mozart <u>had</u> only <u>lived</u> longer, he <u>might</u> <u>have composed</u> even greater works.
- **20.** Mr. Boylan <u>will sign</u> copies of his book after he <u>has given</u> a reading from it.

Verb Phrases, p. 12

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** Before the Louisiana Purchase, the Louisiana Territory <u>was owned</u> by France.
- **2.** President Jefferson <u>must have wanted</u> information about these interior lands.
- **3.** Meriwether Lewis, Jefferson's private secretary, and William Clark <u>were chosen</u> as the leaders of an expedition into the Louisiana Territory.
- **4.** A young Shoshone woman, Sacagawea, was living in a Mandan village near Lewis and Clark's camp.
- **5.** <u>Did</u>n't she <u>accompany</u> them on their expedition as an interpreter and guide?

EXERCISE B

The Lewis and Clark expedition had followed a trail that led to the Rocky Mountains. Those high mountain peaks must have appeared impassable to the members of the expedition. How could they ever get to the other side? Fortunately, Sacagawea knew these mountain passes. This was the land that she had traveled through as a youngster with the Shoshone before she had been captured by enemies. The expedition eventually encountered Sacagawea's own Shoshone people. Her brother had become a chief of the Shoshone, and Sacagawea convinced him that he should provide the explorers with horses, food, and canoes so that the expedition could continue through the mountains to the ocean. On November 7, 1805, the explorers reached the

Pacific Ocean. Sacagawea has not been forgotten. Two mountain peaks, two lakes, and a state park have been named in honor of the young Shoshone woman who came to the aid of Lewis and Clark.

Action Verbs and Linking Verbs A, p. 13 EXERCISE A

- **1.** The crowd <u>remained</u> spellbound throughout the magician's performance.
- **2.** Estelle turned the page of her science book.
- **3.** Marcus should have arrived by now.
- **4.** The solution to that problem <u>remains</u> a mystery to me.
- **5.** I s<u>mell</u> the aroma of a freshly mowed lawn.
- **6.** The stone felt smooth and velvety.
- **7.** The tomato turned red on the vine.
- **8.** That vegetable soup <u>smells</u> delicious.
- **9.** Cory felt a few rain drops on his head.
- **10.** Is Samantha older than Jessica?

EXERCISE B

- 11. The ocean is too calm for surfing.
- **12.** Josh <u>feels</u> disappointed by the absence of surf.
- **13.** The surf had been rough only one week ago.
- 14. Tomorrow the wind may become stronger.
- 15. Then the waves should be higher.

Action Verbs and Linking Verbs B, p. 14

- **1.** Although most of the tour group went to the museum, Ms. Ruiz <u>remained</u> behind at the hotel.
- **2.** The Hanson brothers <u>are</u> the best hockey players in the state.
- **3.** In Madrid, Jody <u>stayed</u> in a youth hostel.

- **4.** The project <u>looks</u> intimidating, but it really isn't.
- 5. In spite of his advancing years, our dog Tadger remains a handsome animal.
- **6.** <u>Taste</u> this stew and tell me if you think it's spicy enough.
- **7.** The detective <u>looked</u> carefully at the footprint in the dirt.
- **8.** The storm yesterday <u>blew</u> down an old maple tree in our yard.
- **9.** Was the delivery service prompt with the package?
- **10.** Suzanne's casserole <u>tastes</u> delicious, just like the casserole Mother used to make.
- **11.** By the first of next month, Eric <u>will have</u> <u>been</u> a champion bicyclist for seven years.
- **12.** If Steve isn't careful, he <u>may injure</u> himself while rock climbing.
- **13.** <u>Does</u> this movie <u>seem</u> boring to you?
- **14.** Please <u>tell</u> me again how much you liked my story.
- **15.** When Charlie <u>finished</u> the book, he recommended it to his older brother.
- **16.** The cows <u>appear</u> unhurt by the hailstorm.
- **17.** Curt often <u>impresses</u> people with his knowledge of movie trivia.
- **18.** Are most of the shoes in the shop this expensive?
- **19.** The letter just <u>appeared</u> on my desk one morning.
- **20.** Ms. Lindenmayer's plan for the debate tournament <u>sounded</u> good to the faculty committee.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, p. 15

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** In the 1700s, the British <u>expelled</u> thousands of Acadians from Canada.
- **2.** Many of those Acadians <u>moved</u> to Louisiana.
- **3.** In Louisiana the name "Acadian" evolved into "Cajun."
- **4.** Cajun settlements <u>spread</u> across the southern part of Louisiana.
- **5.** The paintings of Cajun artist George Rodrigue capture the flavor of Cajun life.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** The people of New Orleans <u>assembled</u> along the streets for the Mardi Gras parade. The Cajun chef <u>assembled</u> the ingredients for gumbo on the counter.
- 7. The cars in the Louisiana Sugarcane Festival parade moved slowly down the street.

 The workers quickly moved the shrimp off the boat to the waiting trucks.
- 8. Marc Savoy, a Cajun musician, plays the accordion.The Cajun band plays every Saturday morning.
- 9. The tourists met that chef, the host of a popular Cajun cooking show.
 The two families met for a fishing trip on the bayou.
- **10.** My favorite author <u>has written</u> a new novel. Karen <u>has written</u> in her journal every day for three years.

Adverbs and the Words They Modify, p. 16

Exercise Students' identification of words modified may vary in item 12.

- 1. In the morning, the campers carefully built a fire and quickly began preparing breakfast.
- **2.** The magician <u>deftly</u> pulled one colorful scarf after another from the hat.
- 3. The third baseman easily caught the pop fly.
- **4.** Professor Losoya <u>never</u> had heard such a racket in his laboratory.
- **5.** Yesterday I received an e-mail from my friend in Tokyo.
- **6.** This very useful device will be a great addition to any household.
- **7.** At the end of the recital, the audience applauded enthusiastically.
- **8.** The extremely eager young actors gathered early at the door of the audition hall.
- **9.** Will Cousin Bruce be arriving today or tomorrow?
- **10.** Aunt Marta gave Carlie an <u>uncommonly</u> generous helping of mashed potatoes.
- 11. My father gives overly detailed instructions.
- **12.** The bus will leave for St. Louis <u>early</u> tomorrow.
- **13.** The demolition crew very carefully placed the explosive charges in the old building.
- **14.** At the stroke of midnight, the crowd in Times Square <u>noisily</u> greeted the new year.
- **15.** The juggler's <u>ridiculously</u> red shirt distracted the audience from his juggling.
- **16.** The coach explained the play <u>especially</u> <u>carefully</u> to the rookies on the team.
- **17.** This <u>thoroughly</u> hilarious film will be playing at a theater <u>soon</u>.

- **18.** The extremely cranky child cried loudly when his rattle was taken away.
- **19.** The <u>cleverly</u> modified car <u>easily</u> won the road rally.
- **20.** Occasionally an immensely patient farmer can become frustrated by the pace of farming.

Noun or Adverb? p. 17

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Edwina takes a personal interest in the match on Friday.
- 2. She hopes Teresa will not be knocked down.
- **3.** In addition to ups, everyone experiences a down now and then.
- **4.** Teresa is strong but doesn't move very fast.
- **5.** She has been able to maintain her weight without having to go on a <u>fast</u>.
- 6. Her opponent, Gabriella, will train tonight.
- 7. Tonight will be her first opportunity to use the new ring.
- **8.** Although she is small, she boxes well.
- Teresa will have to draw upon her deep well of pugilistic skill.
- **10.** Teresa trains days and works nights.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary widely. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** Our city has just finished renovating our historic downtown.
 - Do you prefer to do your shopping downtown?
- **12.** Will the last to leave please turn out the lights?
 - Which stretching exercise should we do last?
- **13.** Tuesday is the day that Aliki volunteers at the library.
 - Shara attended a study session Tuesday.

- **14.** The first of June is my father's birthday. The families with young children were allowed to board the plane first.
- 15. Outside is the right place for throwing the football, not inside!The children can't play outside because of the dense fog.

Prepositions, p. 18

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Joe found a mouse <u>underneath</u> the kitchen table.
- **2.** If it rains, the picnic will be moved <u>inside</u> the house.
- **3.** If we don't get the supplies <u>in</u> time <u>for</u> the trip, we can do without them.
- 4. Jack and Jill tumbled down the hill.
- **5.** The first mate took command of the ship when the captain went below deck.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** <u>(in) 1519</u>, Hernando Cortés led an expedition (to) Mexico.
- **7.** Under his command were 508 soldiers and 110 sailors.
- **8.** After a long voyage he reached Mexico, where a mighty empire had been established by the Aztecs.
- **9.** According to historians, Cortés and his small army had trouble seizing control of the empire because of the Aztecs' sophisticated military organization.
- **10.** However, with the help of many enemies of the Aztecs, Cortés conquered the Aztec empire in 1521.
- **11.** Cortés gathered his troops and dismantled every ship except one.
- **12.** He then marched toward the Aztec capital, Tenochtitlan.

- **13.** Several hundred Aztec chiefs escorted Cortés and his forces into the city.
- **14.** An Aztec delegation carrying splendid gifts walked behind Emperor Montezuma II.
- **15.** An Aztec chief set gifts of golden ornaments before Cortés.

Preposition or Adverb? p. 19

EXERCISE

Students' sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.

- 1. You knocked my hat off!

 The cat jumped off the table.
- 2. It rolled <u>under</u> the porch.

 Weave the fabric strips over then under to create a pattern.
- 3. There are all sorts of bugs underneath.

 Did you look underneath the sofa?
- **4.** We were happy that Sam decided to come along.
 - Tina planted petunias along the sidewalk.
- **5.** I'm going <u>inside</u> to tell everyone what you did.
 - The air inside the cave was cool and moist.
- **6.** Go ahead.
 - Julia finished ahead of Cameron in the race.
- **7.** That hat never fit on my head very well anyway.
 - We cannot move on until we solve the immediate problem.
- **8.** You can see the barn right past those trees.

 They walked past without saying a word.
- 9. Will your hand fit through there?

 The task is overwhelming, but somehow we will muddle through.
- **10.** The rabbit quickly scampered over the hill.

 Can you come over after school tomorrow?

Conjunctions, p. 20

EXERCISE

- **1.** The polar bear is a carnivore <u>and</u> lives almost solely by hunting.
- **2.** Polar bears are wonderfully equipped to exist in the wild, <u>for</u> a dense, white fur covers them completely.
- 3. Not only does fur grow between the pads on their feet, but also several inches of fat covers much of their bodies.
- **4.** Polar bears can <u>both</u> gallop at a speed of up to twenty-five miles per hour <u>and</u> swim six miles an hour.
- **5.** Female polar bears can breed every three years, and they give birth in snow-covered dens.
- **6.** A den is warmer than the outside air, for the female bear seals the entry with snow.
- 7. The sleeping bear's heart rate, respiration, and metabolism drop, and this sleep is a form of hibernation.
- **8.** Unlike that of a deep hibernator, though, the polar bear's temperature remains constant, so the bear can spring into action almost immediately.
- **9.** Polar bears have a highly developed sense of smell <u>and</u> can detect food up to ten miles away.
- **10.** They are well known for their swimming abilities, <u>but</u> they can also run on land at high speeds.

Interjections, p. 21

EXERCISE A

- 1. Hooray! Our soccer team is in the finals.
- **2.** Ugh! The field is so muddy.

- **3.** I don't mind playing in the rain, but yuck, I don't like getting covered with mud.
- **4.** Oh, I think it will be fun.
- **5.** Oops! I slipped.
- **6.** Luther, wow, you've got mud all over you.
- 7. Would you, ah, help me get up, please?
- **8.** Hey! Watch out, or you'll fall, too.
- **9.** Yikes! Your warning came too late.
- **10.** Well, there's the whistle, so I guess the game is about to begin.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary widely. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** Ouch! This rose bush is particularly thorny!
- **12.** "Aha!" exclaimed the detective. "This is a crucial piece of information."
- **13.** Oh, wow, have you ever seen hair as blue as that before?
- **14.** Sh, the movie's about to start.
- **15.** This procedure should take, um, about ten minutes.

Determining Parts of Speech, p. 22

- 1. <u>Some</u> friends went downtown to see the latest movie.
- **2.** Others went roller-skating at a nearby rink.
- **3.** Is that the rink with all the fancy lights?
- **4.** Another friend has invited us back to his house for a party.
- 5. What should we have for a midnight snack?
- **6.** Do you think that we will still be up at midnight?
- **7.** The casserole, <u>which</u> is left over from dinner, tastes better cold than hot.
- **8.** Which sandwich do you prefer?
- **9.** Do you want American or Swiss <u>cheese</u> on your sandwich?

- **10.** Any kind of cheese sandwich is fine with me.
- **11.** Tonight is my favorite night of the week.
- **12.** I volunteer at the nursing home <u>tonight</u>.
- **13.** He let the dog out an hour ago.
- **14.** <u>Call</u> me tomorrow night.
- **15.** Do you have a <u>call</u> button beside your bed at the hospital?
- **16.** Give him orchids, <u>for</u> they are his favorite.
- **17.** Which do you prefer?
- **18.** One dancer <u>mirrors</u> the other in a striking duet.
- **19.** We still need more supplies, <u>so</u> we'll make one more trip to the store.
- **20.** Of course, he refused to look in a mirror.

Review A: Identifying Parts of Speech, p. 23 EXERCISE A

While yet an obscure young [1] writer,
Robert Louis Stevenson traveled through
Belgium and France by canoe and donkey. His
[2] account of this trip was his [3] first book, An
Inland Voyage. Although Stevenson wrote a
number of plays, articles, [4] and short stories,
he is probably best remembered [5] for the
works that children love. Treasure Island,
Kidnapped, and A Child's Garden of Verses have
been [6] popular since they were first published.

Stevenson, who [7] became a writer after studying [8] engineering and law, suffered from [9] ill health all his life. [10] Well, he and his wife searched for a [11] healthful climate for the ailing writer. [12] Eventually, [13] they settled in the South Seas, on the island of Samoa. [14] There the natives [15] revered him; they called him *Tusitala*, which means "teller of tales." Stevenson died [16] in Samoa at the age

of forty-four. [17] At his request, he was buried high on a Samoan mountain. His famous poem "Requiem," [18] which is inscribed on his tomb, ends: "Home [19] is the sailor, home from sea, / [20] And the hunter home from the hill."

EXERCISE B

- **21.** Jules Verne, a nineteenth-century novelist, was one of the first writers of science fiction.
- **22.** Tales of imaginary voyages and incredible exploits had been popular long before Verne's time.
- **23.** Verne, however, <u>combined</u> fantastic adventures with scientific "explanations."
- **24.** Several of his novels, including *Around the World in Eighty Days*, are <u>still</u> read <u>today</u>.
- 25. Of course, it is now easy to circle the world in eighty days, but modern science has not yet duplicated the feats described in Verne's *Journey to the Center of the Earth* and his *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea*.

Review B: Identifying Parts of Speech, p. 24 EXERCISE A

Before William Shakespeare [1] died in 1616, he had achieved [2] some degree of success as a popular [3] playwright and actor. However, [4] few would have predicted the [5] impact that he has had [6] on our language, literature, and culture. [7] Many of Shakespeare's [8] expressions have become part of [9] everyday speech. Many of his lines are quoted [10] extensively both on stage and off. The following lines are [11] among the many that have inspired readers [12] and theatergoers for the last [13] three centuries: "Neither a borrower nor a lender be." "Something is rotten in the state [14] of Denmark." "[15] This was the noblest Roman of them all."

Driginal content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

"[16] O, beware, my lord, of jealousy . . . the green-eyed monster. . . . " "A horse! A horse! My kingdom [17] for a horse!" "Uneasy lies the head that [18] wears a crown." "The course of [19] true love [20] never did run smooth."

EXERCISE B

- 21. I waited uneasily in the outer office until the principal called, "Come in!"
- **22.** In some folk <u>dances</u>, each participant <u>dances</u> separately, improvising steps to the rhythm of the music.
- **23.** Most drivers stop before turning onto a highway, even if there is no stop signal at the intersection.
- **24.** The hikers took the trail to the <u>left</u> when they <u>left</u> the campsite.
- **25.** All <u>but</u> Joel went to the restaurant, <u>but</u> most did not eat.
- **26.** I returned $\frac{home}{N}$ early because I wanted to see who was at $\frac{home}{N}$.
- **27.** As we looked around, we discovered a small shop around the corner.
- **28.** Blue is my favorite color, so I'm going to order a blue sweater.
- **29.** Those fell from those trees.
- **30.** If you hand me that pen, I'll write the number in my own hand.

Review C: Identifying Parts of Speech, p. 25

EXERCISE A

- 1. Over a three-month period he was able to win her over to his point of view.
- **2.** I believe that I <u>left</u> your book in the drawer on the left.
- **3.** They hadn't expected <u>so</u> many people, <u>so</u> they had to bring in more chairs.
- **4.** That is not the best place for that lamp.
- **5.** When you <u>chip</u> away at that hard stone, make sure that you don't get a <u>chip</u> in your eye.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** No one knew the answer to the riddle posted on the Web site.
- **7.** According to the directions on the inside cover, only two players are needed.
- **8.** The student hesitantly <u>qualified</u> his answer with a shrug.
- **9.** Hold on <u>tightly</u> as you climb to the top of the ladder!
- **10.** I asked José <u>and</u> Lenora to meet me at the library, <u>but</u> they both decided to study at home.
- **11.** I am quite capable of doing it, thank you.
- **12.** Errol is looking forward to excavating those.
- **13.** <u>In</u> the past, she has encouraged teamwork.
- **14.** That orange suits you.
- **15.** Which orange do you mean?

Chapter 2: The Parts of a Sentence, pp. 26-48

Sentences and Sentence Fragments, p. 26

EXERCISE A

- **1.** F
- **5.** F
- **8.** F

- **2.** F
- **6.** S
- **9.** F

- **3.** F
- **7.** S
- **10.** F

4. S

EXERCISE B

11. F

14. S

12. S

15. S

13. F

Subjects and Predicates, p. 27

EXERCISE

- 1. Until recently, tourists could reach the tiny island only by boat.
- **2.** The island of Bequia remains relatively untouched by the trappings of modern life.
- 3. A need for economic growth has led to the construction of an airport.
- **4.** Some islanders are worried about the loss of the old way of life.
- **5.** Six hundred species of butterfly have been recorded on Tobago and Trinidad.
- **6.** The Tobago Forest Preserve has protected much of the island from tourism.
- **7.** About a half mile offshore is beautiful Buccoo Reef.
- 8. Sun-drenched fishing villages dot the scenic coastline.
- 9. On Little Tobago Island, eager bird-watchers may spot several kinds of exotic birds.
- **10.** The red-billed tropicbird is one of the magnificent birds inhabiting the forests of Tobago.
- 11. Many other birds migrate over the area.

- 12. Different kinds of trees, shrubs, and wildlife are abundant on the islands.
- **13.** Tobagonians share their island with many types of snakes, lizards, and frogs.
- 14. Different kinds of bats, including the fisheating bat, inhabit the island.
- **15.** Four types of forests can be found in Tobago.
- **16.** The mangrove forest occupies the wetlands.
- 17. The coastal edge of the island and the surrounding beaches are home to the littoral woodlands.
- **18.** The seasonal deciduous forest extends to the lower level of the mountain range.
- 19. The evergreen rain forest covers the top of the mountain range.
- **20.** The streams of Tobago also provide homes to many types of fish and crabs.

Simple and Complete Subjects, p. 28

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Twenty people applied for the job.
- **2.** Last year my mother traveled to China.
- **3.** The cat's thick fur was soft to the touch.
- **4.** Is *The Hobbit* your favorite book?
- **5.** The wet, exhausted hiker was happy to see the shelter.
- **6.** The long rain yesterday turned our yard green overnight.
- 7. Suddenly, the old bridge began to sag in the middle.
- **8.** The large, orange ball bounced over my head.
- **9.** The dog just had puppies.
- **10.** Cool, fresh air blew through the open window.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** A young boy was wandering alone through the large shopping mall.
- **12.** The fearful child began to cry.
- **13.** <u>Several concerned shoppers</u> tried to help him.
- **14.** The frightened child, however, would not speak.
- **15.** Finally, an elderly lady walked up to the child.
- **16.** The kind (lady) began to tell the child a story.
- **17.** Her long, funny story was about a prince.
- **18.** The handsome prince had gotten lost on the way to see his lady.
- **19.** A beautiful white horse helped the prince find his way.
- **20.** After telling the story, the kindhearted lady helped the child find his mother.

Simple and Complete Predicates, p. 29

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Nicci and Jackie <u>sat</u> on the porch swing for the photograph.
- **2.** Carl lifted the lid of the pot.
- **3.** The old barn leaned a little to one side.
- **4.** The four cowboys <u>walked</u> down the street in a line.
- **5.** One of the players <u>brought</u> her own soccer ball to the match.
- **6.** The dog slept on the porch all afternoon.
- **7.** The plumber <u>shut</u> off the water under under the sink.
- **8.** We <u>have made</u> our final selection from the menu.
- **9.** Will Carter come to the party on Friday?
- **10.** You need this book for class tomorrow.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Margarette designed a beautiful garden in the backyard.
- **12.** She planted very special tulips along the edges of the garden.
- **13.** One day Margarette went outside to water the garden.
- **14.** Margarette (heard) an unusual noise coming from the edges of the garden.
- **15.** The tulips were making a soft noise.
- **16.** Margarette knelt down near one of the tulips.
- **17.** The tulip talked to Margarette in a soft, delicate voice.
- **18.** A small red tulip was thanking Margarette for watering it!
- **19.** The voices of the tulips <u>always amazed</u> Margarette.
- **20.** After all, not too many people have heard the gentle voice of a tulip.

Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates, p. 30

EXERCISE A

- **1.** The Gómez family goes to a nearby park almost every weekend.
- **2.** The two youngest boys enjoy playing soccer with their friends.
- **3.** The older girls prefer to go bird-watching through the park's beautiful trails.
- **4.** Sometimes the entire tamily goes hiking together.
- **5.** A long day at the park is a favorite pastime for the Gómez family.

EXERCISE B

6. Modern composer Dan Welcher was born in 1948.

- 7. Welcher earned degrees from the Eastman School of Music and Manhattan School of Music.
- **8.** Dan Welcher is one of the most original and exciting modern American composers.
- **9.** Dan Welcher (has composed) many types of music, including symphonies, operas, and chamber music.
- **10.** The Chicago Symphony, the St. Louis Symphony, and many other orchestras have performed) Welcher's music.

Finding the Subject, p. 31

EXERCISE

- **1.** The <u>people</u> of Mexico <u>have</u> a great appreciation of his work.
- **2.** Is Rivera known for any particular style?
- **3.** His <u>murals</u> of Mexico's social problems <u>are</u> famous.
- **4.** We <u>looked</u> at that painting of two Mexican women with a baby.
- **5.** How <u>does</u> the <u>artist achieve</u> the feeling of tranquility in that picture?
- **6.** What <u>do you think</u> of the muted colors?
- 7. Don't those soft pastel colors convey a sense of calm?
- **8.** There <u>is</u> a <u>copy</u> of that picture in this brochure about the artist.
- **9.** What is the title of that painting?
- **10.** Here <u>is</u> an <u>article</u> about Rivera.
- **11.** Which years was Rivera in the United States?
- **12.** <u>Have you seen</u> photographs of his murals?
- **13.** Some of the murals show different aspects of Mexican history.
- 14. Do you know about his wife, Frida Kahlo?

- **15.** Wasn't Kahlo an accomplished artist, also?
- **16.** There <u>have been</u> many great <u>artists</u> of the twentieth century.
- 17. What kinds of art influenced Rivera?
- **18.** Several different <u>styles</u> of art <u>influenced</u> the artist.
- **19.** Was he influenced by postmodernism and cubism?
- **20.** There <u>are</u> significant <u>moments</u> in history <u>reflected</u> in Rivera's works. [*or* There <u>are</u> significant <u>moments</u> in history reflected in Rivera's works.]

The Understood Subject, p. 32

EXERCISE

1.	Jerome	11.	you
2.	you	12.	Teddy
3.	you	13.	Jim
4.	Constance	14.	you
5.	you	15.	you
6.	you	16.	you
7.	Karl	17.	Paolo
8.	Ginger	18.	you
9.	you	19.	you
10.	you	20.	We

Compound Subjects, p. 33

- 1. Exercise, a healthful <u>diet</u>, and sufficient <u>rest</u> are essential for good health.
- 2. Either Raoul or Marty will win the election.
- **3.** The <u>oaks</u>, the <u>maples</u>, and the <u>sycamores</u> have lost their leaves.
- **4.** <u>Greta</u> or <u>Sheila</u> will water the garden this afternoon.
- **5.** <u>Sheep</u>, <u>goats</u>, and <u>chickens</u> wandered around in the large yard.
- **6.** The <u>musicians</u>, <u>dancers</u>, and <u>actors</u> met for a final dress rehearsal.

- **7.** Either Jon or I will wash the dishes tonight.
- **8.** Did the <u>children</u> and their <u>parents</u> enjoy the camping trip?
- **9.** <u>Randy</u>, <u>Martha</u>, and <u>Jennifer</u> were the top three finishers in the math competition.
- **10.** Will Monday or Tuesday be a good day for a meeting?
- **11.** The <u>police</u> and the <u>fire department</u> responded to the alarm.
- **12.** <u>Planes</u>, <u>trains</u>, and <u>buses</u> are all means of public transportation.
- **13.** Will Victor or Elian answer the question?
- **14.** The <u>hippos</u> and <u>giraffes</u> crowded around the water hole.
- **15.** Either <u>exercise</u> or an extended <u>vacation</u> will help relieve your stress.
- **16.** <u>The Grapes of Wrath</u> and <u>East of Eden</u> are two novels by John Steinbeck.
- **17.** The <u>barn</u> and the front <u>pasture</u> were flooded during the storm.
- **18.** In spite of Roger's objection, <u>Kelly</u> and <u>Wilson</u> painted the doghouse bright red.
- **19.** <u>John Lennon</u> and <u>Paul McCartney</u> were the two chief songwriters for the Beatles.
- **20.** Did Ross, Margaret, and Chen recognize the bicycle?

Compound Verbs, p. 34

EXERCISE

- 1. The speech will be televised live at noon and rerun at six.
- **2.** I have finished my research and <u>can</u> now write my report.
- **3.** The teacher <u>reviewed</u> the material and asked each student a question.
- **4.** I <u>put</u> the plants in the sunlight and <u>watered</u> them thoroughly.

- **5.** We <u>talked</u>, <u>laughed</u>, and <u>sang</u> during the long bus ride.
- **6.** <u>Have</u> the students <u>researched</u> the issue or <u>discussed</u> different possibilities yet?
- 7. I will go to the movies, see a play, or visit a museum this weekend.
- **8.** The actress could sing and dance quite well.
- **9.** Jack <u>put</u> on his coat and <u>went</u> out into the snow.
- **10.** The entertainer <u>juggled</u> several balls and performed acrobatics.
- **11.** <u>Will</u> you <u>pack</u> your bags and <u>confirm</u> your airline reservations today?
- **12.** The audience <u>rose</u> to their feet and applauded loudly.
- **13.** The picnickers gathered the leftovers, collected the trash, and cleaned the tables.
- **14.** Next summer we <u>will hike</u>, <u>climb</u> mountains, and ride our bikes in Colorado.
- **15.** <u>Did</u> Uncle William <u>receive</u> the package and <u>examine</u> it?
- **16.** We <u>read</u> the papers, <u>signed</u> them, and <u>mailed</u> them back to the agency.
- **17.** Will you come to my house and help me with some repairs?
- **18.** After school, we <u>exercise</u> at the gym and then do our homework.
- **19.** The customer <u>looked</u> at her receipt and <u>asked</u> about her change.
- **20.** Our grandmother <u>paints</u>, <u>sews</u>, and <u>plays</u> flute quite well.

Compound Subjects and Verbs, p. 35

EXERCISE

1. Will the players and their team captain introduce themselves?

- **2.** The four <u>boys ran</u> to the line, <u>picked</u> up a stick, and raced back to the start.
- **3.** <u>Jeanette</u> and her <u>brother</u> <u>will be</u> at choir practice early.
- **4.** <u>Did you feed</u> the cats and <u>change</u> their water?
- **5.** Are Maía and Paula rehearsing tonight?
- **6.** The <u>members</u> of the committee <u>discussed</u> the proposition and then voted against it.
- 7. We washed the vegetables, sliced them, and then cooked them with spices.
- **8.** <u>Ducks</u>, <u>geese</u>, and <u>swans</u> <u>were swimming</u> around the large lake.
- **9.** Luigi doesn't swim, run, or cycle very often.
- **10.** Florentine painted a picture of black doves and hung it in the living room.
- 11. The book and the movie were equally dull.
- **12.** Bob and Geno put on their helmets and rode their bikes.
- **13.** <u>Dietrich studied</u> hard for his exam and made a high grade.
- **14.** <u>Are</u> the <u>cardinals</u> and <u>blue jays</u> visible from here?
- **15.** <u>Sasha</u> and <u>Boris played</u> a hard game of tennis and then <u>swam</u> in the lake.
- **16.** The <u>tourists</u> <u>took</u> photographs, <u>asked</u> questions, and <u>looked</u> around curiously.
- **17.** <u>Jacqui</u> <u>washed</u> the clothes, <u>hung</u> them to dry, and <u>folded</u> them neatly.
- **18.** We <u>listened</u> to the song and <u>asked</u> the singer many questions about it.
- 19. Will the coach teach us a new drill and practice it with us?
- **20.** When <u>will</u> the <u>crew</u> and <u>passengers</u> <u>board</u> the plane?

Complements, p. 36

- 1. The pilot checked the gauges carefully.
- 2. Have you given your brother his lunch yet?
- **3.** After a long day at work, the nurse felt exhausted.
- **4.** Wanda became an engineer after graduation.
- **5.** I read <u>science fiction</u> and <u>mysteries</u> most often.
- **6.** After the concert, the musicians seemed satisfied.
- **7.** Did you find a book about real estate yet?
- **8.** The committee planned the <u>construction</u> and <u>maintenance</u> of roadways.
- **9.** After the football game, Duane appeared tired.
- **10.** Stephen mailed his grandmother a <u>music</u> box.
- **11.** Send a birthday <u>card</u> to your uncle John.
- **12.** The sweater looks green to me.
- **13.** Has Richie submitted a college <u>application</u> yet?
- **14.** The candidate sent the <u>reporter</u> a <u>copy</u> of his speech.
- **15.** Bring me the bread knife, please.
- **16.** Steve enjoys horror <u>novels</u> and action <u>movies</u>.
- **17.** Will Moira send her poem to a magazine?
- **18.** Errol is often late.
- **19.** This book is not the one.
- **20.** The babysitter gave little Nora her dinner.

The Subject Complement: Predicate Nominatives, p. 37

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Louis is a mathematician and a teacher.
- **2.** Were those two girls the winners?
- **3.** After years of hard work, she became a superb ballerina.
- **4.** Should Barney have been the <u>leader</u> of this team?
- 5. What an excellent singer she is!
- **6.** The pianist is a composer, also.
- 7. Mrs. Woodward became an excellent nurse.
- **8.** Her doves' names are <u>Juliette</u>, <u>Musetta</u>, and <u>Luigi</u>.
- **9.** What a mistake that could have been!
- **10.** My father has been an <u>engineer</u>, a <u>scientist</u>, and a professor.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** My favorite movie star is Myrna Loy.
- **12.** The winner of the spelling bee is the second grader wearing the blue jacket.
- **13.** Ms. Ozu had been a student assistant before she became a teacher.
- **14.** Is Chet the new president of the student council?
- **15.** The best day to visit the museum is Tuesday.

The Subject Complement: Predicate Adjectives, p. 38

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Carlos has grown much <u>taller</u> through the years.
- **2.** Does the soup taste too <u>salty</u> to you?
- 3. How beautiful her voice is!
- **4.** The seas appear calm this morning.
- **5.** The kitten looked quite <u>content</u> it its new box.

- **6.** The modern music sounded odd to us.
- **7.** Does Jorge seem happy in his new home?
- **8.** The roses from the bush outside smell sweet.
- **9.** François is <u>satisfied</u> with his new job.
- **10.** How <u>soft</u> and <u>delicate</u> the baby bird seems!

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** How colorful the sunset is this evening!
- **12.** Lira often feels hungry after soccer practice.
- **13.** As the sky grew darker, the stars grew brighter.
- **14.** Jennifer seems pleased about winning the award.
- **15.** This ghost story is scarier than I remembered.

Subject Complements, p. 39

- 1. Latex becomes rubbery when heated.
- **2.** Rubber tappers from the Amazon sell latex, which they extract from rubber trees, to manufacturers; this substance is the <u>basis</u> for many rubber products.
- 3. The rubber tappers are mostly poor and uneducated, but they are hard workers.
- **4.** The ranchers and farmers were greedy for land and began to burn the rain forest at an alarming rate.
- **5.** These fires were <u>dangerous</u> not only to the thousands of species of plants and animals of the forest but also to the livelihood of the rubber tappers.
- **6.** Chico Mendes was a <u>rubber tapper</u> and a member of a workers' union.
- 7. He became the <u>spokesperson</u> for and a <u>hero</u> to the poor rubber tappers.

- **8.** He warned that the destruction of the Amazon rain forest was a <u>threat</u> to the world.
- **9.** Environmentalists from around the world took notice of Mendes's message, but local ranchers and farmers became <u>angry</u> with Mendes.
- **10.** It was a <u>surprise</u> to the world when two local ranchers assassinated Chico Mendes on December 22, 1988.

Objects: Direct Objects, p. 40

EXERCISE A

- 1. The nobles wore steel <u>armor</u> and <u>helmets</u>.
- **2.** He was a successful <u>warrior</u> thanks to his great war horse.
- **3.** Women in splendid gowns attended the tournaments.
- **4.** A knight would often throw a <u>scarf</u> to his lady during the events.
- **5.** People of the Middle Ages respected DO DO chivalry, bravery, and honor.
- **6.** Medieval students studied the <u>craft</u> of alchemy.
- **7.** Travelers took <u>shelter</u> in a castle or monastery.
- **8.** Educated nobles enjoyed the <u>tales</u> of Chaucer and the <u>poetry</u> of Petrarch.
- **9.** King Edward III's son was the <u>Black Prince</u>.
- **10.** King Edward III started a <u>war</u> with France.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** In 1346, trading ships carried infected black rats into Italian ports.
- **12.** Fleas on the rats spread a dangerous disease.
- **13.** The bubonic plague killed <u>thousands</u> throughout Europe until 1352.

- **14.** It attacked people of all ages.
- **15.** Medieval doctors found no <u>cure</u> for the plague.

Objects: Indirect Objects, p. 41

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Are you reading the book I gave you?
- 2. I mailed my brother the birthday gift.
- **3.** Juanita sent her teacher an Easter card.
- **4.** Would you like a <u>drink</u> with your sandwich?
- **5.** Please send $\frac{100}{\text{me}}$ a copy of the letter.
- **6.** The flight attendant offered the <u>passengers</u> <u>DO</u> <u>drinks</u> and <u>snacks</u>.
- **7.** Are you going to buy <u>plates</u> and <u>napkins</u> for the picnic?
- **8.** The dog chased its <u>tail</u> for several minutes.
- **9.** Please hand me the pitcher of orange juice, Franco.
- **10.** Have you given <u>Janice</u> your <u>answer</u> yet?

EXERCISE B

- 11. Why don't you tell <u>us</u> a story?
- **12.** Aunt Maria brought <u>me</u> a souvenir from Thailand.
- **13.** The driver told the <u>officer</u> his version of the accident.
- **14.** Please offer cousin <u>Tina</u> my condolences.
- 15. Lester loaned Miranda a sweater.

Objects: Direct and Indirect Objects, p. 42 EXERCISE A

- **1.** The committee chairperson gave <u>her</u> the gavel.
- **2.** Our pool's lifeguard left Manuelo the free passes.
- **3.** The interview will give <u>Emily</u> a chance to visit the college.

- **4.** The algebra teacher lent her a new ruler.
- **5.** Aerobic dancing provided us an opportunity for vigorous exercise.
- **6.** The track star jumped <u>hurdles</u> and ran relays during the meet.
- **7.** The pet store owner gave the <u>puppy</u> a bone.
- **8.** The doctor prescribed <u>penicillin</u> for the child's illness.
- **9.** The counselor offered the students some advice.
- **10.** Their discovery of radium and polonium earned <u>Pierre</u> and <u>Marie Curie</u> the Nobel Prize in physics.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Kareem taught his <u>sister</u> an African American <u>folk song.</u>
- **12.** The president signed the energy <u>bill</u> after the congressional vote.
- **13.** The Lions Club awarded Mrs. Rosa a silver tray for community service.
- **14.** The tree branch struck the car's <u>windshield</u> with a crash.
- **15.** Toni Morrison read the <u>audience</u> an <u>excerpt</u> from her novel.

Parts of a Sentence, p. 43

EXERCISE

- **1.** Ruth became the new <u>treasurer</u> for the bicycle club.
- **2.** Felix wrote Martha a long letter while she was away.
- **3.** The students seemed <u>tired</u> after the long lecture.
- **4.** We finished our geometry <u>homework</u> before dinner.

- **5.** The principal offered the <u>seniors</u> some good <u>advice</u> about choosing a college.
- **6.** Has the coach given the <u>players</u> their <u>plo</u> gloves?
- **7.** The salad tasted <u>better</u> after you added the horseradish.
- **8.** The winner of this year's poetry competition was Carlita.
- **9.** The sophomores chose a new team <u>name</u>.
- **10.** What a great <u>leader</u> he became!
- **11.** The magician appeared <u>nervous</u> during the beginning of her performance.
- **12.** Will Jacqueline be our new <u>tutor</u>?
- **13.** Hear this beautiful <u>poem</u> by Emily Dickinson.
- **14.** Are the counselors going to send <u>us</u> a <u>list</u> of recommended books?
- **15.** We went to the shopping mall and bought some <u>candles</u> and a <u>vase</u>.
- **16.** Ron gave me some paint, a few brushes, and a large pad to practice with.
- **17.** The soup that my grandmother made smells spicy.
- **18.** When will Trevor become a performer?
- **19.** The snow felt <u>cold</u>, but we continued to play outside.
- **20.** Are those black birds with yellow spots starlings?

Classifying Sentences by Purpose, p. 44

Exercise

- 1. **INT**—How were we able to win?
- **2.** *DECL*—We won by using our superior skill and stamina•
- **3.** *IMP*—Stop gloating. [or *IMP*—Stop gloating.]

- **4. INT**—Oh, why shouldn't we brag just a bit?
- **5.** *DECL*—It's never becoming to brag•
- **6.** *DECL*—I can't believe we won. [or *EXCL*—I can't believe we won.]
- 7. *IMP*—Keep your excitement to yourself.
- **8. INT**—Do you hear that applause?
- **9.** *DECL*—It's so loud. [or *EXCL*—It's so loud.]
- 10. DECL—Let's go accept our trophy.

Review A: Sentences and Sentence Fragments, p. 45

EXERCISE

1. S **8.** S **15.** S **2.** F **9.** F **16.** F **3.** S **10.** F **17.** F **4.** F **11.** F **18.** S **5.** S **12.** S **19.** F **6.** F **13.** S **20.** S **7.** S **14.** F

Review B: Sentence Parts, p. 46

EXERCISE A

- 1. Do many of us worry about the future?
- **2.** To most of us, the <u>future</u> probably <u>seems</u> uncertain.
- **3.** Will we go to college?
- **4.** What kinds of jobs will we have?
- **5.** Some of us <u>are wondering</u> about marriage and children.
- **6.** Even very young <u>boys</u> and <u>girls</u> sometimes <u>worry</u> about world conditions.
- 7. We surely <u>cannot predict</u> the future with any certainty.
- **8.** In my opinion, one should not waste time and fret about the future.

- **9.** One should plan ahead but should also enjoy the present.
- **10.** (%) <u>Tell</u> me your thoughts about the future.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Several years ago my family bought a new place in Arizona.
- **12.** At that time my friends were college students in Texas.
- **13.** We sent them an invitation for a weekend visit.
- **14.** They were <u>happy</u> and accepted the invitation immediately.
- **15.** Our home was a <u>ranch</u> about thirty miles from the nearest town.
- **16.** We sent them detailed directions for getting to the ranch.
- **17.** A bus was the only <u>link</u> between the ranch and the town.
- **18.** Unfortunately, my friends arrived in town after 6:00 P.M. and missed the last bus.
- **19.** The only hotel in town was <u>full</u>.
- **20.** The friendly police chief gave my <u>friends</u> a <u>po</u> room for the night in the local jail.

Review C: Sentence Parts, p. 47

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** How far in advance <u>do you</u> usually <u>shop</u> for birthday presents?
- **2.** In my opinion, <u>birthdays</u> <u>are</u> very important occasions.
- **3.** Gifts for others should reflect their tastes, not yours.
- **4.** One <u>must consider</u> the recipients' interests carefully.
- **5.** Not <u>many</u> of my relatives <u>share</u> my sister's interests or like her tastes.

- **6.** Her <u>choice</u> of gift for a grandparent or an aunt or an uncle <u>is</u> often inappropriate.
- **7.** Neither subtle <u>hints</u> nor candid <u>suggestions</u> <u>penetrate</u> her consciousness.
- **8.** Fortunately, <u>all</u> of us <u>recognize</u> the thought behind the present.
- **9.** (%) <u>Tell</u> me your opinions about birthday gifts.
- **10.** <u>Would you consider</u> a job as a personal shopper?

EXERCISE B

- **11.** The reading assignment was an informative article about medical ethics.
- **12.** The haiku is a major <u>form</u> of Japanese verse.
- **13.** The last mile of a ten-mile hike always seems longest.
- **14.** Do you give your <u>pets</u> enough <u>water</u> during the summer?
- **15.** The jurors carefully considered the <u>allegations</u> of the defense counsel.
- **16.** The audience at the awards dinner grew restless during the long speeches and fidgeted uncomfortably.
- **17.** To the playwright's surprise, his work became the $\underline{\text{talk}}$ of the town.
- **18.** I gave my <u>brother</u> a <u>book</u> for his birthday last year.
- **19.** The group improvised and sang the <u>song</u> without accompaniment.
- **20.** They sent <u>us</u> a detailed <u>list</u> of suggestions for the camping trip.

Review D: Kinds of Sentences, p. 48

EXERCISE

1. EXCL—What fantastic weather we had on our vacation!

- **2. INT**—Where is the nearest fire station?
- **3.** *DECL*—How we will raise the money is a good question•
- **4.** *IMP*—Ask the owner's permission before feeding the animals.
- **5.** *IMP*—Stop making all that noise!
- **6. INT**—Can you recommend anyone for the job?
- **7. INT**—If necessary, may we call on you for help?
- **8. INT**—At what time do you get off work?
- **9.** *DECL*—I have a job at the local supermarket this summer•
- **10. INT**—Would you mind helping me with my homework?
- 11. EXCL—What an exciting trip that was!
- **12. INT**—When did the first settlers arrive in Australia?
- **13.** *DECL*—Where the meeting will be held is anybody's guess•
- **14. INT**—Does the University of Washington have a medical school?
- **15.** EXCL—How pleased your parents must be!
- **16.** *IMP*—Go to Mrs. Panico's office and give her this note.
- **17.** *DECL*—A noted chemist has been invited to speak at the next assembly•
- **18.** *IMP*—In case of emergency, dial this number•
- **19. INT**—What is the correct English translation of that Latin expression?
- **20.** *IMP*—If you have any questions, be sure to ask your teacher•

Chapter 3: The Phrase, pp. 49-71

Phrases, p. 49

EXERCISE

1. phrase

6. phrase

2. phrase

7. no

3. phrase

8. phrase

4. phrase

9. phrase

5. no

10. phrase

Prepositional Phrases, p. 50

EXERCISE A

- **1.** The bus drove by a large, red barn.
- **2.** An enormous picture was painted on one wall.
- **3.** The picture reached above the second story.
- **4.** It showed an eighteenth-century man in a white shirt.
- **5.** The picture was painted by a local artist.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Spike Lee was born in Georgia.
- **7.** He studied at a New York university.
- **8.** The video store near my house carries his films.
- **9.** Lee appears in some films.
- **10**. His father wrote the music for this movie.
- 11. Lee made a film about Malcolm X.
- **12.** The director wore a hat with a large X.
- **13.** During a recent newscast I heard Lee speak.
- **14.** He talked about a film he had just finished.
- **15.** The interviewer showed several scenes from the film.

Adjective Phrases, p. 51

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. Both Alaska and Hawaii were once territories of the United States.
- **2.** The name for the mainland portion of Alaska was once *Alákshak*.

- **3.** The origin of the name for Hawaii is unknown.
- **4.** These are two of our most beautiful states.
- **5.** Many people from all over enjoy these magical places.

Exercise B Answers will vary.

- **6.** The early inhabitants *of the caves* drew hunting scenes on the walls.
- **7.** No one *in the audience* spoke during the performance.
- **8.** The magician called upon two people *from the crowd*.
- **9.** A single fingerprint *on the mantle* turned out to be a critical clue.
- **10.** Erica lent me two magazines *from her collection*.

Adverb Phrases, p. 52 *Note: For pages 61–62, students' identification of words modified may vary for some items.*

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Please return your books to the library shelves.
- **2.** Harry is helpful in a crisis.
- 3. During the last century my ancestors came to this country.
- **4.** Pete found some sesame oil on the top shelf.
- **5.** Chinese food is well-known for its delicious flavors.
- **6.** Mother served dinner at the kitchen table.
- 7. After the holiday we put the ornaments away in the attic.
- 8. We ate fresh fruit for dessert.
- **9.** For the first time I felt confident.
- **10.** The kids remained quiet during the movie.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. We fried the fish we had caught *in the morning*.

- **12.** Do you enjoy playing the violin *in the symphony*?
- **13.** The desk seems to be broken *in a bad way*.
- **14**. Run as fast as you can to the car!
- **15.** That actor is quite famous *for his Broadway work*.

Adjective and Adverb Phrases, p. 53

EXERCISE A

- 1. Chameleons are famous for their ability to change color to match their surroundings.
- 2. However, true chameleons, which live mainly in Madagascar and Africa, do not change color to camouflage themselves.
- <u>adjective</u>
 3. The chameleons of

 <u>Madagascar</u> do change color
 in response to light, temperature, and fear of attack.
- 4. Chameleons change color by collecting or diluting pigmented cells called melanophore cells.
- **5.** They are funny-looking lizards with as many as three horns on their heads and bulging eyes that move separately from each other.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **6.** Did she blow out all of the candles ? on her cake, adjective phrase
- 7. Be sure to sign your name . on the bottom line, adverb phrase
- **8.** I enjoy cooking fish . *in the campground, adverb phrase*
- **9.** The moviegoers' hearts pounded . during the exciting car chase, adverb phrase
- **10.** I counted at least twenty guests . *in tuxe-does, adjective phrase*

Participles, p. 54

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** Our <u>excited meteorologists</u> told us that the storm's name was Clive.
- **2.** It was the first storm in <u>recorded</u> history to reach our town.
- **3.** The <u>worried</u> townspeople hastily nailed up boards and filled sand bags.
- **4.** My grandparents recalled a similarly chilling storm from their youth.
- **5.** When the storm hit, everyone hunkered down in their mildewing basements.
- **6.** Several hours later, the storm abated and relieved neighbors came up to see the damage.
- **7.** The <u>surprised</u> townspeople found, to their delight, that only the city park needed repairs.
- **8.** <u>Uprooted</u> trees had fallen on the playground.
- **9.** Several dozen energized colunteers worked together to cut up and stack the branches.
- **10.** Only a few days later, <u>delighted</u> thildren were once again playing on the swings and slides.

EXERCISE B

fascinating

- **11.** Long before Elvis and the Beatles, pianists were mesmerizing audiences. (fascinate)
- **12.** Among pianist Franz Liszt's fans were half-swooning women. (*adore*)
- 13. women were not Ludwig von

 Beethoven's problem, however. (Faint)
- **14.** This composer sometimes forgot that he was also the soloist, rose from the piano, and began to conduct in wild, extravagant gestures. (*rivet*)

15. Once, Beethoven became so involved in the music that he accidentally jostled a boy whose job was to hold a candle, knocking *embarrassed* the candlestick out of the boy's hand. (*embarrass*)

Participial Phrases, p. 55

EXERCISE A

- 1. This bowl, carved in the hills of Tennessee, is unique.
- **2.** Chopping the carrots quickly, the chef finished the stew.
- **3.** Given all the facts, we reached our decision quickly.
- **4.** The power lines damaged by the storm needed repairs.
- **5.** Fifteen men clothed in military uniforms, presented the flags.
- The hikers exhausted by the long climb, slept soundly that night.
- 7. Stopping to tie my shoelace, () noticed an unusual insect on the sidewalk.
- **8.** The cat seeing movement in the bushes, crouched low in the grass.
- **9.** Covered by a cloth napkin, the loaf of bread in the basket was still warm.
- **10.** She returned to the house, remembering the keys and the book.

EXERCISE B

- 11. The <u>potato</u>, <u>first cultivated in South</u>
 America, is a versatile food.
- **12.** <u>Discovered by the Spanish in Peru</u>, the potato reached Europe in the 1550s.
- 13. This <u>vegetable</u>, <u>once worshipped by the Incas</u>, was first scorned by the Europeans.
- **14.** Some people, confusing the potato with another plant, thought the vegetable was poisonous.

15. Actually, <u>potatoes</u> are quite nutritious, <u>providing adults with various vitamins and minerals.</u>

Participles and Participial Phrases, p. 56

- **1.** Few people know about the process required to become a knight.
- 2. By the twelfth century, a program challenging to both mind and body had been developed.
- **3.** Boys growing up in noble households began training for knighthood at a young age.
- **4.** <u>Leaving their family homes</u>, they were fostered in the houses of influential friends or uncles.
- **5.** The boys learned etiquette, cared for horses, and exercised to build the musculature needed to carry heavy arms.
- **6.** Demonstrating his ability to hunt, fence, and ride, a fourteen-year-old became a squire.
- 7. At about the age of twenty-one, welltrained in arts of defense, the young man was ready to undergo initiation into knighthood.
- **8.** The ritual usually began when the squire, freshly bathed, put on ceremonial robes of white and red.
- **9.** He spent the night in the chapel and offered his sword, blessed by a priest, to the service of his lord.
- 10. Now called an acolyte, the young man put on his best clothes and went in to a breakfast feast.

Gerunds, p. 57 **E**XERCISE subject **1.** Swimming, another aquatic sport, demands physical endurance. predicate <u>nominative</u> **2.** A more leisurely form of exercise is walking. subject **3.** Although it may seem leisurely, sailing also requires strength. direct **4.** Petra prefers water-skiing and is quite good at it. object of a preposition **5.** For me, nothing beats the thrill of cycling! object of a **6.** Was Olympian Babe Zaharias best known for her running? predicate **7.** Wasn't her forte golfing? object of a **8.** Which contestants won preposition medals in tumbling? **9.** Figure skating is certainly a graceful sport! object of a **10.** Every person should find a preposition way of exercising for health and for pleasure. direct **11.** Some kinds of exercise require planning and expense. object of a **12.** Sports, however, are not the only means of staying fit. **13.** Even bird-watching can offer opportunities for exercise. object of a 14. Avid bird-watchers often do a lot of hiking.

indirect object	15.	On weekends, give
		gardening a try.
subject	16.	Hoeing gives a person's
		arms and shoulders a real
dianak		workout.
direct object	17.	In the fall, fallen leaves
1		need raking.
predicate nominative	18.	My least favorite kind of
		yardwork is mowing.
subject	19.	For some people, of course,
		working provides exercise.
subject	20.	Vacuuming and other
		household chores also
		require effort and energy.

Gerund Phrases, p. 58

- **1.** <u>Jumping out of airplanes</u> sounds scary to me.
- **2.** Our reason for <u>calling you</u> is to invite you to our graduation.
- **3.** I don't mind shoveling show once in a while.
- **4.** Skidding on wet pavement causes many accidents.
- 5. You will enjoy meeting Hatim.
- **6.** Sweating over a hot stove in August is not fun.
- **7.** My favorite weekend activity is <u>singing</u> with a local band.
- **8.** Achieving a perfect score gave Molly a sense of pride.
- **9.** Instead of <u>subtracting the service charge</u>, Chad added it.
- **10.** Daydreaming about problems can be a source of creative ideas.

- **11.** After <u>dining at a nice restaurant</u>, they went to a movie.
- **12.** His idea of a pleasant Saturday is fishing from the bridge.
- **13.** One service club's holiday project is caroling at the hospital.
- **14.** Nicole's sisters enjoy skating in the park.
- **15.** By shopping early in the morning, we will get the freshest produce.
- **16.** My hobbies include reading mysteries and biographies.
- **17.** His arms were sore after kneading the dough for ten pizzas.
- **18.** Choosing a college to attend can be overwhelming.
- **19.** Mike doesn't like waiting for the bus at night.
- **20.** Her part-time job is <u>packing computer components</u> at the factory.

Gerunds and Gerund Phrases, p. 59 EXERCISE A

- **1.** Buying a good telescope is a good way to get started.
- **2.** Also, many colleges have a practice of opening their observatories to the public.
- **3.** One other helpful activity is studying star charts to learn the layout of the sky.
- **4.** Some amateur astronomers also invest time in photographing the stars.
- **5.** Discovering a comet is the dream of a few persistent skywatchers.
- **6.** The tradition of <u>naming comets after the</u> <u>first person or people to sight them</u> brings a kind of fame to these skywatchers.
- **7.** For most stargazers, however, a night of lying out under the stars is pleasure enough.

- **8.** Several times a year, people can enjoy viewing meteor showers.
- **9.** Sometimes you can see up to forty meteors an hour, simply by being outside at the right time!
- **10.** The sky is filled with the streaking of meteors among the stars.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** Planting a garden is another relaxing activity.
- **12**. Some gardeners enjoy <u>debating the choice</u> of plants for their beds.
- **13.** A pleasant way to end a day in the garden is snoozing in the hammock.
- **14.** Some gardeners benefit from <u>subscribing to</u> gardening magazines.
- **15.** Tasting the first vegetables harvested from one's own garden is a treat!

Participial Phrases and Gerund Phrases, p. 60 EXERCISE

- **1.** Eating out in Tokyo is fun.
- **2.** The problem is <u>choosing among so many</u> different restaurants.
- **3.** Pointing at the puppy, Jim said he really wanted to get one.
- **4.** In botany class, we became quite good at identifying types of flowers.
- **5.** After dinner, <u>feeling happy and full</u>, we thanked our hosts.
- **6.** Going to the beach this summer will be a lot of fun.
- **7.** Searching for an answer, I looked in a current dictionary.
- **8.** Smiling proudly, the little boy pointed to his new toys.

- **9.** I have always enjoyed <u>eating sushi</u>.
- **10.** It's too bad that <u>preparing sushi</u> is Mom's least favorite thing to do!
- 11. Buying a used car requires research.
- **12.** The little boy stomped into his room, <u>slamming the door behind him.</u>
- **13.** The team has a slim chance of <u>finishing in</u> the top four.
- **14.** The dog, <u>wagging its tail wildly</u>, bounded out to meet us.
- **15.** Quickly paying for the groceries, she ran out of the store.
- **16.** Decorating this birthday cake will take at least an hour.
- **17.** My cousin actually enjoys taking tests.
- **18**. Sorting through the old photographs, we found a portrait of our grandfather.
- **19.** The alligator, gliding silently through the dark water, approached its prey.
- **20.** My least favorite part of this job is scraping the paint off the woodwork.

Infinitives, p. 61

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. I like to keep my stapler and tape right at hand.
- **2.** The dictionary is on the next shelf, ready to adverb answer my questions about spelling.
- **3.** To succeed in math is a special goal of mine.
- **4.** I often use a calculator to check my work.

 direct object
- **5.** I intend to study for my next algebra exam.
- **6.** I also need to complete an essay for my history class.
- 7. That's a project to begin early!

- **8.** I keep an alarm clock on my desk to remind me of how much study time remains.
- **9.** To concentrate for an hour is sometimes a challenge.
- **10.** I am sure to excel in my classes if I stick with my study habits.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** To plan a good vacation takes time and thought.
- **12.** I would like to describe my used car to you.
- **13.** This exercise requires you to exhale slowly over a count of ten.
- **14.** Oh, my, how I hate <u>to iron</u> my cotton clothes!
- **15.** To build their own house is their dream.

Infinitive Phrases, p. 62

EXERCISE A

- **1.** For some, the attempt to understand his writing is a challenge.
- 2. They find it hard to understand the sixteenth-century expressions.
- **3.** However, most people like to see the plays performed.
- **4.** To prevent the audience from becoming bored, Shakespeare included comic scenes.
- **5.** He also tried to include music and songs in many plays.
- **6.** To see a play staged can be a great pleasure.
- **7.** Many famous actors have wanted to play the part of Hamlet.
- **8.** Scholars are still curious to learn more about Shakespeare's life.
- **9.** He is known to have been the son of a glove maker in Stratford-on-Avon.

10. His goal was to be both a playwright and an actor.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** To forget the lines would be a disaster.
- **12.** It might help to fasten the lines to my mirror so that I can see them while dressing.
- **13.** The lines to notice are the ones I stumbled on yesterday in rehearsal.
- **14.** "To sleep, perchance to dream"—that's certainly a memorable line!
- **15.** I thought at first that it would be easy to read the lines well, but it takes practice!

Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases, p. 63 EXERCISE

- 1. The pictures to see are my family's baby pictures.
- **2.** Of course, to call my own baby pictures anything but beautiful would be lying!
- **3.** To record the growth of our family is another of our goals.
- **4.** We keep many family pictures in our house to remind us of the importance of our past.
- **5.** I like to study the old, crumbling photo of my great-grandparents.
- **6.** The photographer chose to take the picture on my great-grandparents' porch.
- 7. I use looking at this picture as a way to imagine how hard they worked on their farm.
- **8.** I never met them, but I am told that they managed to raise corn, potatoes, and other vegetables for the family's table.
- **9.** My goal is to imitate their hard work and hopefulness.

10. I often pause to think about this brave and enterprising couple.

Verbal Phrases A, p. 64

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. Learning about the history of coffee led me to the conclusion that coffee hasn't been around forever.
- **2.** The story is that about 850 A.D., an Arab goatherd noticed his goats acting strangely.
- **3.** <u>Investigating the goats' behavior</u>, Kaldi tasted the berries of a bush the goats had been eating.
- **4.** The berries were coffee berries, and Kaldi, feeling the effects of the caffeine, told others of his discovery.
- **5.** The <u>newly discovered</u> coffee was under production in Arabia by the fifteenth century.
- **6.** Europe had to wait for coffee until the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.
- **7.** Some people started <u>using coffee not only</u> as a beverage but also as a medicine.
- **8.** Drinking coffee in the new coffeehouses was a prime form of entertainment in the 1700s.
- **9.** People sipped their coffee and read newspapers, talking about the latest news.
- **10.** Some people's idea of a pleasant time is to drink coffee with friends.

Exercise B Answers will vary.

- **11.** One way to become dizzy is to spin quickly in circles.
- **12.** <u>Creeping along plants</u> is the caterpillar's mode of transportation.
- **13.** He set a goal of <u>succeeding at the track</u> meet.

- **14.** The audience rose to acknowledge the entrance of the judge.
- **15.** Entering the vast cavern, we fell to an amazed hush.

Verbal Phrases B, p. 65

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** I started to think about the choice in my sophomore year of high school.
- **2.** You can start by reading books that describe colleges.
- **3.** You may want to narrow your choices to colleges in your state or to private colleges.
- **4.** A college <u>renowned for its strong academic</u> program is always a good choice.
- **5.** Some students, <u>looking forward to making</u> new friends at college, also examine social opportunities.
- **6.** Of course, there is no harm in considering a school with a good sports program, too.
- Cheering your team on until you are hoarse in the throat is fun.
- **8.** The excitement of a good game helps students to blow off steam.
- **9.** In the end, however, students considering their four years of college must focus on the education they will gain.
- **10.** Another option is to take advantage of your school counselor's knowledge and assistance.

EXERCISE B Answers will vary.

- **11.** Driving a car is a big step towards independence.
- **12.** Our garage band, recording our first CD, could not believe that our dreams had come true.

- **13.** The hardest thing about secrets is <u>keeping</u> them.
- **14.** Don't even try to deny that you ate the last piece of cantaloupe!
- **15.** Pronouncing their words clearly, the actors made sure that the audience understood the story.

Appositives, p. 66

- **1.** The puppy, a <u>Pomeranian</u>, had long, wavy fur.
- **2.** We gave the dry cleaner, Mr. Nowlin, our suits to press.
- **3.** We especially wanted to hear the cellist Yo-Yo Ma.
- **4.** The hottest months, <u>June</u>, <u>July</u>, and <u>August</u>, are my favorites.
- **5.** The book details the activities of Timmy Roybal, a Pueblo.
- **6.** Samuel Maverick, a cattle <u>rancher</u>, refused to brand his animals.
- **7.** My mentor, <u>Jane Galway</u>, is helping me research colleges.
- **8.** Terrill Park, my hometown, holds a parade each year for Independence Day.
- **9.** My friend <u>Anandi</u> is learning to snow-board.
- **10.** The last day of exams, <u>Friday</u>, is on our minds constantly.
- **11.** The house, a turn-of-the-century <u>mansion</u>, is now a museum.
- 12. We've looked everywhere for our dog Jake.
- **13.** Dr. Renwick, the violin <u>teacher</u>, also plays cello and viola.
- **14.** Who wrote the poem "Ode on a Grecian Urn"?

- **15.** The younger of the two boys in that family, Sam, looks like his grandfather.
- **16.** The dessert, a magnificent chocolate <u>cake</u>, stood in the center of the table.
- **17.** You should call your aunt <u>Sarah</u> this weekend.
- **18.** He must take this medicine, an <u>antibiotic</u>, for ten days.
- **19.** The addition to their house, an extra bedroom, took six months.
- **20.** Mr. Galven, the <u>assistant principal</u>, wants to see you in his office.

Appositive Phrases, p. 67

EXERCISE

- **1.** Dorothy Parker, the poet and short-story writer, is remembered for her wit.
- **2.** A college education, a dream of many, is a worthy pursuit.
- **3.** The gold ring, a family heirloom, was given to my grandmother by her mother.
- **4.** Our family car, a rusty 1991 station wagon, still runs well despite its age.
- **5.** We traveled to Horseshoe City, a tiny town left over from the state's mining days.
- **6.** Charon, the tiny moon of Pluto, is named for a character in Greek mythology.
- **7.** Fear of walking under ladders, a superstition held by many people, is baseless.
- **8.** <u>A well-known folk tale</u>, "Bean Soup" is a favorite story among children.
- **9.** Oxalis, a clover-like plant, makes a colorful garden border.
- **10.** The piano, a neglected old spinet, stood in the dusty corner.
- **11.** This book, a collection of short stories, was due yesterday.

- **12.** The essay contest, one of several sponsored by the newspaper, is open to all students.
- **13.** My cousin, now a private pilot in Alaska, used to be afraid of flying.
- **14.** Central Avenue, the main street of the town, is lined with shops and restaurants.
- **15.** The magazine article, <u>a feature story about hot-air balloonists</u>, was fascinating.
- **16.** Three bowls and a platter, examples of the potter's best work, are on display in the gallery.
- **17.** <u>Usually a slow, shallow stream</u>, the creek now raged out of its banks.
- **18.** That movie, one of the best I've ever seen, should win several awards.
- **19.** My mother, the eighth of eleven children, grew up in North Dakota.
- **20.** Jeremy, until recently an unexceptional student, is determined to excel in math.

Appositives and Appositive Phrases, p. 68 EXERCISE

- 1. Pluto was once considered the ninth planet in the solar system, although its steep orbit at times brings it inside the orbit of its nearest neighbor, Neptune.
- **2.** On this dwarf planet, a complete rotation, one day and night, takes 6.39 Earth days.
- 3. We have not known about this dwarf planet, which was downgraded from an official planet, for very long.
- **4.** In fact, it was discovered by Clyde Tombaugh, an amateur astronomer at the Lowell Observatory.
- **5.** Tombaugh located Pluto in Gemini, a well-known constellation, on February 18, 1930.

- **6.** For a time, scientists wondered if Pluto were an escaped moon of Neptune, a planet with many moons.
- **7.** The discovery of Charon, <u>Pluto's tiny</u> moon, brought this idea into question.
- **8.** The dwarf planet is named after Pluto, Greco-Roman god of the underworld.
- **9.** Fittingly, little Charon is named after a dreaded character in Greek myth, the ferryman who rowed the dead into the underworld.
- **10.** Pluto and Charon are difficult to see, even with the best telescopes, but more information is discovered about them all the time.

Review A: Phrases, p. 69

EXERCISE A

- During a test I used to become nervous or upset.
- **2.** My mother discussed this with me last spring.
- **3.** I had become quite upset about my final exams.
- **4.** I had become very tense, and I had lost much of my appetite.
- **5.** One day my mother sat down and explained the value of a little anxiety.
- **6.** Although she was concerned, she talked very calmly about test taking.
- 7. Too much worry, she told me, is unhealthy for anyone.
- **8.** No one in that situation can perform well.
- **9.** Too much worry about a test can prevent clear thinking.
- **10.** Her explanation <u>of stress and anxiety</u> was very helpful.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Many people never learn to stay afloat in the water.
- **12.** Some of them, <u>fearing the water</u>, stay away from it.
- **13.** Others, however, try again and again to become good swimmers.
- **14.** Eventually some succeed in <u>mastering the</u> basic technique.
- **15.** My sister, for instance, can now swim after spending many years in classes.
- **16.** Undaunted by past failures, she would enroll in a new class each fall.
- **17.** In class, she would cling to the side of the pool, kicking her feet.
- **18.** Standing in shallow water, she would then practice her arm movements.
- **19.** In deep water, though, she sometimes ended by paddling slowly to the side.
- **20.** Then she would work up her nerve to begin again.

Review B: Phrases, p. 70

EXERCISE A

- **1.** At first I thought I heard kittens.
- **2.** The cries I heard were loud enough for a whole litter.
- 3. I took a saucer of milk and went upstairs.
- **4.** I began an extensive search and wasted most of the afternoon.
- **5.** To my surprise, I did not find the kitten I had expected.
- **6.** Instead, I spotted a nest with two little pigeons in it.
- 7. That was very surprising to me.
- **8.** Using some wood from my workroom, I built the pigeons a snug house.

- **9.** Few of the neighborhood birds can boast such luxury.
- **10.** Unfortunately, they are skittish and flighty as pets.

EXERCISE B

- 11. It is easy to grow luffa gourds.
- **12.** Many people are quite successful at raising a large crop.
- **13.** It takes about ten days for vines to sprout from seeds.
- **14.** Plants <u>nurtured by the sun</u> flourish and produce many gourds.
- **15.** Sun-ripened in about eighty days, the gourds may be harvested and eaten.
- **16.** Left on the vines, the gourds eventually make sponges.
- **17.** Consider the benefits of growing a single luffa crop.
- **18.** Combining some of the luffas with apples and sweet potatoes, you can prepare a delicious treat.
- **19.** You might use other luffas from the same crop to wash the dishes.
- **20.** Giving luffas as gifts to your family and friends is another option.

Review C: Phrases, p. 71

EXERCISE A

- **1.** <u>Bicycling through the countryside</u> is a favorite hobby of mine.
- **2.** I enjoy the freedom to get around on my own.
- **3.** I also ride my bike to school.
- **4.** At 8:00 A.M., I am on my way, pedaling furiously.

- **5.** Neither rain nor heat nor barking dogs keep me from riding my bike daily.
- **6.** My current bike, <u>an old three-speed model</u>, is not well suited for long-distance riding.
- **7.** <u>Affectionately dubbed Wheels</u>, it originally belonged to Carlos Ramirez.
- **8.** Carlos, a former neighbor of mine, made me promise to keep Wheels clean and properly oiled.
- **9.** Three years' worth of repairs attests to my good faith in the matter.
- **10.** Nevertheless, I am trying to save enough money for an all-terrain bike.

EXERCISE B

- 11. Swimming the length of the pool was one of the requirements for graduation.
- **12.** This requirement, a longtime rule at the college, was easy for many students.
- **13.** To my sister, it was a difficult challenge.
- **14.** She would jump into the pool with her friends standing by to cheer her on.
- **15.** Despite her intentions, she never got farther than ten feet from the edge of the pool.
- **16.** Nevertheless, she would try again, advancing and improving each time.
- **17.** The instructor, <u>a sympathetic person</u>, became interested in my sister's problem.
- **18.** He convinced her that swimming did not mean risking her life.
- **19.** My sister persisted, <u>finally passing the</u> swimming requirement.
- **20.** In her case, swimming seemed to be a challenge that she accepted and met.

Chapter 4: The Clause, pp. 72-93

Clauses, p. 72

EXERCISE

- 1. Ever since she was a young girl, Harriet has loved flowers.
- 2. She is fond of all flowers, but she especially loves those with a beautiful fragrance.
- **3.** Harriet's <u>backyard</u> <u>is bordered</u> by many different varieties of roses <u>that bloom</u> profusely all summer.
- **4.** Her favorite <u>rosebush</u>, a red, climbing variety, <u>grows</u> from a fifty-year-old cutting <u>that</u> was taken from a rosebush in her mother's yard.
- 5. <u>Did you know</u> that she has taken cuttings from that bush and has given them to her daughter and granddaughter?
- **6.** Since <u>Harriet lives</u> in Illinois, her <u>garden is covered</u> with snow during the winter and <u>has</u> no flowers for her to enjoy.
- 7. After reading an article about growing flowers in a greenhouse, <u>Harriet turned</u> her porch, <u>which faces</u> south, into a greenhouse.
- **8.** Inspired by the beautiful gardenia bush that was a birthday gift, she fashioned a tabletop greenhouse of plant stakes and plastic.
- **9.** Soon, the gardenia <u>bush</u> that <u>had been</u> the only plant in the greenhouse <u>was joined</u> by small cuttings.
- **10.** The indoor and outdoor <u>flowers</u> <u>add</u> beauty to Harriet's house and to her neighborhood, and the fragrant <u>plants</u> <u>bring</u> joy to the woman <u>who</u> so carefully <u>tends</u> them.

Independent Clauses, p. 73

- 1. During the hurricane season, meteorologists keep a close eye on storm systems over oceans near the United States.
- **2.** <u>Hurricanes begin as easterly waves</u>, which may grow and form an area of low pressure called a tropical depression.
- 3. When winds of a tropical depression reach 32 miles per hour, the depression officially becomes a tropical storm, and when the storm winds reach 74 miles per hour, the storm is classified as a hurricane.
- **4.** Collecting data from the storms helps meteorologists because, from the data, they can forecast the size, strength, and timing of impending hurricanes.
- **5.** Since hurricanes can have wind speeds of more than 200 miles per hour, they produce large waves, which are called storm surges.
- **6.** Even if a hurricane's winds do not cause severe damage, a community lying in a low area along the waterfront may be flooded by the storm surge.
- 7. One of the benefits of hurricane forecasting is the time the warnings give to residents who live in flood-prone areas.
- **8.** Residents can decide whether they will stay for the duration of the storm or evacuate.
- **9.** Evacuating can be difficult because hurricanes can measure 300 miles across.
- 10. Pay attention to weather forecasts from June to November, the months during which most hurricanes occur in the United States.

Subordinate Clauses, p. 74

EXERCISE A

- 1. Samuel just finished reading the book that he bought last weekend at the beach.
- **2.** We will introduce Madeleine to everyone as soon as she arrives from the airport.
- **3.** Have you ever wondered when that tree in the backyard was originally planted?
- 4. Margaret, whose essay on indigenous

 North American birds was nominated for
 an award, will present her research to the
 class on Friday.
- **5.** Do you know who in the class will attend the symphony concert on Saturday night?

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Since the hour is late, let's postpone making our decision.
- 7. He is an artist who paints billboards
- **8.** The interview will go well <u>if you remember</u> one rule.
- **9.** Because I had lent Julius my book, I had to borrow Melanie's.
- 10. I don't know who Carson McCullers is.
- 11. Here is the book that you want.
- **12.** When the field is we have to cancel the baseball game.
- 13. Dad wanted a car that used very little gas
- **14.** I couldn't remember what the answer was.
- 15. She draws the cartoons that are so weird.

Independent and Subordinate Clauses A, p. 75

EXERCISE A

- **1.** IND
- **3.** IND
- **5.** IND

- **2.** IND
- **4.** SUB

Exercise B

Sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **6.** Whenever you walk in the park, pick up a few pieces of litter and throw them away.
- **7.** Although we are having spaghetti for dinner, we're also going to have a casserole for my brother and sister who don't like pasta.
- **8.** Because I live in this town, I think I know more about it than someone who doesn't live here.
- **9.** What I wish for every day, no one else knows.
- **10.** After I come back from spring break, I'll have only about two more months of school before summer break.

Independent and Subordinate Clauses B, p. 76

EXERCISE

- 1. SUB
- **5.** IND
- **8.** IND

- **2.** IND
- **6.** SUB
- **9.** IND

- **3.** SUB
- **7.** SUB
- **10.** SUB

4. SUB

The Adjective Clause A, p. 77

Exercise

- 1. The house that we bought needs work.
- **2.** The band, which I had heard before, was wonderful.
- **3.** Those people who already have tickets may go inside.
- **4.** That crispy shrimp dish has a sauce that I like.
- **5.** The weavers whom we met live in Cuzco.
- **6.** Marcos, whose ambition is to become a restaurant chef, has enrolled at the Institute of Culinary Arts.
- **7.** Have you met Emily, who is Greg's first cousin?
- **8.** The airline ticket to Chicago that I bought last week is nonrefundable.

- **9.** The subject on which Dr. Kolar will be speaking Thursday is the art and science of repairing computers.
- 10. This is the scenic overlook where you can see the rolling hills on the left, the flat prairie on the right, and our beautiful city straight ahead.

The Adjective Clause B, p. 78

EXERCISE

- 1. Meals on Wheels, a volunteer organization, delivers hot, nutritious meals to people who are unable to shop and cook for themselves.
- 2. The nutrition programs that we know today can trace their roots back to World War II.
- 3. During the war, people in England whose homes were bombed often lost their kitchens.
- 4. The Women's Volunteer Service for Civil

 Defense cooked and delivered meals to
 people who no longer could cook at home
 for themselves.
- to the people with no cooking facilities and also to military personnel, came to be known as Meals on Wheels.
- **6.** Where did the first American program that delivered meals to homebound senior citizens begin?
- 7. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, is the city where the home-delivered meal service was pioneered.
- **8.** Who would have believed that the program, which began serving only seven senior citizens, would grow to serve so many?

- **9.** The number of meals that are delivered every day is in the millions.
- 10. The recipients of the meals not only receive nutritious food, which helps to keep them healthy, but they also receive the benefit of human contact with the volunteers.

Relative Pronouns, p. 79

EXERCISE

- 1. Jesse Owens, whose real name was James Owens, was a great athlete.
- **2.** His birth, which was in 1913, took place on a farm in Alabama.
- **3.** The place where he first showed indications of being a fast runner was junior high school.
- **4.** One race, when he ran extraordinarily well, stands out.
- **5.** People remember the 100-meter dash that he ran in 10.3 seconds.
- **6.** At the 1936 Olympics, which were held in Germany, Owens won four gold medals.
- 7. Owens became the athlete every other athlete in track and field tried to emulate.

 whom [or that]
- **8.** Owens had a stunt that he sometimes performed.
- **9.** He would race against a racehorse, which was actually faster than he was.
- **10.** Because the firing of the gun that was used to start the race usually caused the horse to balk, Owens would win many of the races.

The Adverb Clause A, p. 80

EXERCISE

1. When we got out of the traffic jam, we all relaxed.

- **2.** According to Alexander Pope, "Fools rush in where angels fear to tread."
- **3.** When you return from your trip, show us your pictures.
- **4.** While Mr. Thundercloud read the poem, everyone listened.
- **5.** <u>Unless someone notifies you</u>, you should be at the airport by noon.
- **6.** They discussed the problem for almost an hour, but they could not resolve the issue because neither side was listening.
- 7. In preparation for her grandmother's arrival, Marissa emptied the two top drawers of the dresser so that her grandmother would have a place to put her clothes during the visit.
- **8.** Even though John had read the chapter twice, he went over the material a third time.
- **9.** My mother believes that you should do every task as well as you can, even if the job is very small.
- **10.** You may go to the concert Saturday <u>provided</u> ed that you have finished your homework for the weekend.

The Adverb Clause B, p. 81

EXERCISE

- When I was twelve, my family and I spent a week in Philadelphia, the City of Brotherly Love.
- 2. William Penn planned for the city that he founded to be a haven for religious freedom because he had been persecuted for practicing the Quaker religion.

- **3.** <u>Until it was abolished in 1984</u>, a city regulation prohibited structures from being higher than Penn's statue, 548 feet atop City Hall.
- **4.** Philadelphia is considered the birthplace of the United States since both the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution were signed there.
- **5.** Did you know that Philadelphia was the capital of the colonies while the patriots were rebelling against the British government?
- **6.** If I am not mistaken, every year millions of tourists visit the Liberty Bell, Independence Hall, Carpenters' Hall, and Congress Hall.
- **7.** Historians believe that in 1777 Betsy Ross sewed the first flag of the United States in the house on Arch Street, although they are not certain.
- **8.** Wherever you go in the historic district, you will find such famous structures as Christ Church, which was built beginning in 1727.
- **9.** Even though I have visited many historic sites, few compare to Elfreth's Alley, about thirty-five brick houses that have been occupied continuously since the early 1700s.
- **10.** I believe the buildings in Southwark, which was settled by the Swedes in the early 1600s, are even older than the buildings in the downtown area are.

Subordinating Conjunctions, p. 82

EXERCISE

1. <u>After Kyle returned</u>, he reported his findings.

- **2.** Magdelena made an important announcement before the bell rang.
- **3.** (As soon as the weather warms up, let's go camping.
- **4.** We visited my grandmother whenever we could.
- **5.** We'll leave a light on until you return from the game.
- **6.** Wherever I go, my dog follows.
- **7.** The group sang while they waited for the school bus.
- **8.** After we washed the car, we had a water fight.
- **9.** Please answer every question if you can.
- **10.** Michael ran as if someone were chasing him.
- **11.** Although we planned to arrive early, the traffic was heavy and we were late.
- **12.** We won't start dinner until you arrive.
- **13.** I understood the situation better <u>after</u> we discussed it.
- **14.** We will go shopping tomorrow whether it is snowing or not.
- **15.** Unless we have a late freeze, the peaches should do very well this year.
- **16.** Even though he had taken the day off, Eric still worked diligently at home.
- 17. The veterinarian said to keep the dog quiet so that its incision would have a chance to heal.
- **18.** You can borrow the one hundred dollars provided that you pay it back in one month.
- **19.** Please call me soon because I need to make plans for our trip.

20. As long as you are getting the car washed, would you please go to that station where we went last week and get five gallons of gas?

Adjective and Adverb Clauses, p. 83

EXERCISE A

- 1. The two waterfalls that form Niagara Falls are the Horseshoe Falls in Ontario and the American Falls in New York.
- **2.** Niagara Falls was carved about twelve thousand years ago when Lake Erie overflowed and formed the Niagara River.
- **3.** For centuries, as the river flowed over the land to a high cliff, the water cut through the earth and eventually formed the falls.
- **4.** The falls have cut a gorge about two hundred feet deep that extends for seven miles past the falls.
- 5. The water continues to erode the soft rock under the falls so that the ledges of the falls wear away at a rate of one inch to six feet per year, depending on the volume of water.

- **6.** Josh's father, who works at the library, loves all types of music.
- **7.** In fact, <u>as long as I have known him</u>, Mr. Redmond has played an acoustic guitar.
- **8.** Even though he is very talented, Mr. Redmond plays only for his family and friends.
- 9. <u>Unless you know him well</u>, you might ask, "Why doesn't he become a professional musician?"
- **10.** He explains that the noise level of the clubs is too loud for his hearing, which is very acute.

The Noun Clause A, p. 84

EXERCISE A

- **1.** This is what you should wear inside a temple.
- **2.** Find out which parts of the temple can be visited.
- **3.** We don't know whether we will see a temple elephant.
- **4.** Whoever is offered fresh coconut is being honored.
- **5.** I understand that I need permission to photograph people.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** I have always believed that people like to laugh.
- **7.** What you decide to do is completely up to you.
- **8.** We'll give whoever is left the prize.
- 9. Whatever Ms. Wing wants is fine.
- **10.** His fear is that he will forget his lines.
- **11.** My parents are very impressed by what I know about computers.
- **12.** I have forgotten where I left my keys.
- **13.** The problem was that Aaron hadn't arrived yet.
- **14.** I was very surprised by what happened in the race.
- **15.** That the milk was sour was immediately obvious.

The Noun Clause B, p. 85

EXERCISE

- 1. Although I don't agree with you, I can see how you would think that.
- **2.** That the candidate for the Senate office was very conservative was not a widely known fact.

- **3.** A steaming bowl of fish chowder, a slice of whole-wheat bread, and a glass of cold milk are what I want for lunch.
- **4.** Mrs. Scovil told us to write our two-page persuasive essays on whatever controversial topics were most interesting to us.
- **5.** Give whoever is the last to leave the keys to lock the door.
- **6.** My parents chose where the family will spend its summer vacation.
- 7. That she looks so much younger than her years surprised me.
- **8.** Whoever parked in the no-parking zone must move the car.
- **9.** We did not realize that the information would not be available until next Saturday.
- **10.** Gilbert taught whoever was interested the basic chess moves.

Subordinate Clauses A, p. 86

- **1.** They cannot believe that anyone can travel five blocks in four minutes.
- **2.** It all begins each morning when my alarm goes off.
- **3.** The alarm buzzes noisily, but I pretend that I do not hear it.
- **4.** My older brother, who is very conscientious, begins to prod me.
- **5.** After I finally get out of bed, he continues to bother me.
- **6.** When I arrive downstairs, my parents take over.
- 7. Every day, they worry that I'll be late.
- **8.** The only member of the family who doesn't scold me is the dog.

Original content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

- **9.** I leave for school at the last possible minute that I can.
- **10.** I've never yet been late; why everyone worries so is beyond me.

Subordinate Clauses B, p. 87

EXERCISE

- 1. That the Brittany spaniel is good-natured and obedient is obvious to the neighbors.
- **2.** Do not take the job <u>if you are not able to lift</u> heavy packages.
- **3.** Give the door prize to whoever sold the most tickets to the banquet.
- **4.** A sea horse looks like a tiny horse that has been joined to a fish's body.
- **5.** Before you decide on a career, consider carefully your abilities, interests, and opportunities.
- **6.** I was looking for a book that has a poem by Emily Dickinson.
- **7.** Did you know that the church's centennial celebration was last weekend?
- **8.** When you have finished peeling the potatoes and carrots, add them to the soup on the stove.
- **9.** We have included gymnastics, which is a popular sport, in our new athletics program.
- **10.** My Persian cat leaps into the air whenever she sees a flying insect.

Sentences Classified According to Structure A, p. 88

EXERCISE A

- **1.** S
- **3.** S
- **5.** CX

- **2.** CD
- **4.** CC

EXERCISE B

- **6.** S
- **8.** CC
- **10.** CX

- **7.** CX
- **9.** CD

Sentences Classified According to Structure B, p. 89

- 1. Before the contest began, the soloists were nervously pacing back and forth.
- ___5
- **2.** <u>Tired of studying, Diego closed his</u> book and turned on his stereo.
- 3. After the storm had uprooted the tree, some of the clean-up crew trimmed the branches, and others loaded them into trucks.
- 5
- **4.** Without saying another word,
 Harriet collected her belongings,
 jammed them into a bag, and
 marched out of the meeting.
- CX
- worker approached our mailbox with my long-awaited package.
- CD
- **6.** Take your jacket, or wear a sweater.
- CC
- 7. Jacques wished that he could go on the camping trip, but he couldn't convince his parents to let him go because he had come home late three nights the week before.
- CX
- **8.** The flowers that create the beautiful scene outside the courthouse window are cared for by a professional gardener.
- CD
- 9. The arrival of the candidates had been anticipated for months; the city officials were waiting for them at the reception.
- 5 10. The only person with a key was
 Mr. Pavarotti, the owner and operator of the store.

Review A: The Clause, p. 90

EXERCISE A

SUB, ADJ

- 1. Travelers who drive across the Great Plains during the summer are often surprised by the size of the bridges spanning the streams.
- 2. Sometimes a half-mile-long bridge has been built across a stream that is little more than a muddy trickle.
- **3.** They may wonder why the bridge is there at all.
- **4.** If they revisited the spot in the springtime, they would understand the need for the bridge.
- **5.** The tiny stream is transformed into a huge river when the spring rains come.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** However, some of the rivers that drain the Great Plains dry up entirely during the summer.
- **7.** If there is little rainfall during the autumn, the riverbeds may remain dry until March or April.
- **8.** A spring thaw that is accompanied by heavy rains may lead to flood conditions.
- **9.** Residents know that a small stream can become a wide river practically overnight.
- **10.** The bridges crossing such a river have to be strongly constructed so that they can withstand the raging floodwaters.
- 11. The wooden bridges of earlier days were washed away or badly damaged whenever there was a rainy spring.
- **12.** Construction teams would replace what the spring torrents had destroyed.

- **13.** With steel and reinforced concrete, they built bridges that could withstand the spring floods.
- **14.** That the new bridges would be needed only one or two weeks a year was obvious to the designers and the builders.
- **15.** A Great Plains bridge is like a summer cottage that stands empty most of the year.

Review B: The Clause, p. 91

EXERCISE A

- **1.** If you are in the neighborhood, stop by for a Texas-style barbecue.
- **2.** That Daphne could not attend Diego's party is unfortunate.
- 3. Latwanda's cousins, who have lived in London for the past eight years, are in the United States for an extended visit.
- **4.** <u>Did Henri find the path</u> that leads to the orchard?
- **5.** Please let the phone ring at least ten times SUB, ADV whenever you call.

- **6.** One New Year's resolution that I plan to keep is to hand in my homework on time.
- 7. If I don't start writing my reports in advance, I am likely to be late in handing them in.
- **8.** Few of my friends are as skilled at procrastinating as I am.
- **9.** For me and others like me, the problem is not that the work is too difficult.
- **10.** What is problematic for many of us is actually getting started.
- **11.** Putting things off creates problems that can often be avoided.

- **12.** For example, I nearly failed a Spanish course because I put off writing a paper on Cervantes.
- **13.** After a little research, I knew exactly what I wanted to say.
- **14.** I just wasn't willing to set aside the time that I needed to write it.
- **15.** I now pretend that every project is due at least two weeks in advance.

Review C: The Clause, p. 92

EXERCISE

- 1. Although bridges are built for practical purposes, many bridges are not only useful but also beautiful.
- 2. Old-fashioned covered bridges can still be seen in some parts of the country, chiefly in New England.
- 3. These bridges were not intended to be objects of art, but many people today consider them very lovely.
- 4. The simple lines and the weathered wood of a covered bridge go well with its rustic surroundings.
- 5. Those who design modern bridges take both usefulness and beauty into account.
- 6. The Brooklyn Bridge, which was opened in 1883, was one of the first steel suspension bridges in the United States.
- 7. Not only was the Brooklyn Bridge
 the longest suspension bridge of its
 time, but it was also one of the
 most artistically pleasing.

- artistic triumph even before it was completed, and it quickly became a favorite subject for painters and photographers.
- 9. Many suspension bridges built
 during the twentieth century
 employ structural principles that
 were developed by the designer of
 the Brooklyn Bridge.
- 5 10. Two of the best-known suspension bridges of recent times are San
 Francisco's Golden Gate Bridge
 and New York's VerrazzanoNarrows Bridge.

Review D: The Clause, p. 93

- demanding, it's a sport in which strong young players can really shine.
- 2. Steffi Graf of Germany began playing tennis professionally at the age of thirteen.
- 3. Graf was still a teenager when she won four Grand Slam tennis championships and an Olympic gold medal.
 - **4.** Another Olympic winner, Zina Garrison Jackson, began playing tennis in Houston at the age of ten, and at seventeen, she won the junior singles titles at Wimbledon and at the U.S. Open.

- 5. The German tennis star Boris

 Becker won his first tournament
 competitions at the age of nine, but
 he didn't become a professional
 player until he graduated from
 high school.
- became the youngest player to rank in the Top 5, won many national and international tennis competitions.
- 7. Another American player, Andre
 Agassi, started serving on a tennis
 court at the age of two, and he, too,
 excelled at an early age.

8. Agassi won six important tournaments when he was only eighteen.

CC

- **9.** Tracy Austin and Chris Evert also started young; in fact, Tracy Austin was only sixteen years old when she made headlines by winning the women's title at the U.S. Open.
- **5 10.** In tennis, young players really can become big winners.

Chapter 5: Agreement, pp. 94–116 Number, p. 94

EXERCISE A

1. S	8. P	15. S
2. S	9. S	16. P
3. P	10. P	17. P
4. S	11. S	18. S
5. S	12. P	19. P
6. P	13. P	20. S [<i>or</i> P]

14. S

EXERCISE B

7. S

- **21.** Many of the citizens <u>agree</u> with the platform of the candidate.
- **22.** Someone <u>has suggested</u> several good ideas for new uses of the old factory.
- **23.** A print of a painting by Picasso <u>hangs</u> in the city library.
- **24.** All of the women on the panel <u>were given</u> equal time to speak.
- **25.** Theodore von Kármán, a leading aeronautics engineer, was born in Hungary.
- **26.** Two senators from every state <u>serve</u> in the U.S. Congress.
- **27.** Lukas and I <u>have</u> tickets to the Seurat exhibit at the Metropolitan Museum.
- **28.** One of the gases in the earth's atmosphere is argon.
- **29.** The president was scheduling another trip to Japan.
- **30**. Salt and sand on the roadways often damage the undersides of cars.

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 95

EXERCISE A

- **1.** S
- **3.** P
- **5.** S

- **2.** S
- **4.** P

EXERCISE B

6. is

11. covers

7. live

12. stretches

8. visit

- **13.** is
- 9. stands
- **14.** see

10. are

15. forms

6. make

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 96

EXERCISE A

- are
 was
 were
- **7.** is
- **8.** was
- 4. are5. indicates9. were10. were

EXERCISE B

The late Ella Fitzgerald, of all American jazz singers, are perhaps the most popular. Her remarkable abilities at improvisation were the source of her worldwide acclaim. Her first were recordings of jazz music was made in 1938. Fitzgerald, along with such other African American female singers as Billie Holiday, were at that time the source of fame for Big Bands. Fitzgerald, more than all other singers, have inspired me to pursue a career in music.

Indefinite Pronouns A, p. 97

- **1.** Neither of the candidates (<u>has</u>, have) run for office before.
- **2.** Most of the soup (was, were) gone.
- **3.** None of the athletes (*was*, *were*) tired after the tournament.
- **4.** A few of the volunteers for the job (*was*, *were*) selected.
- **5.** (Have, <u>Has</u>) all of the cheese been eaten?
- **6.** Someone from your fan club (*is*, *are*) waiting at the stage door.
- **7.** None of the rain (<u>has</u>, have) seeped into the basement.
- **8.** (*Is*, *Are*) either of the movies available to rent?

- **9.** Everyone, including the movie critics, (*raves*, *rave*) about her latest movie.
- **10.** Everybody in the meeting (<u>agrees</u>, agree) with your position.
- **11.** Some of the cookies (*has*, *have*) a filling of strawberry jam.
- **12.** (<u>Has</u>, Have) anyone calculated the circumference of this circle?
- **13.** Few of the items on the shelf (*was*, *were*) marked with prices.
- **14.** (<u>Do</u>, Does) many of Jason's friends know about the surprise party?
- **15.** All of the students in tenth grade (*was*, *were*) invited to the job fair.
- **16.** (*Was, Were*) any of the varnish spilled on the carpet?
- **17.** Somebody (*have*, *has*) already borrowed the camera from the equipment room.
- **18.** Nothing (*surprise*, *surprises*) me anymore.
- **19.** Each of the contest entries (*is*, *are*) evaluated by a panel of trained judges.
- **20.** Everything in my locker (*smell*, *smells*) like the cologne I spilled in there.

Indefinite Pronouns B, p. 98

EXERCISE A

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- 1. Neither
- 6. Something
- 2. anybody
- **7.** Both

3. Some

- 8. some
- **4.** everyone
- **9.** all
- **5.** Several
- **10.** Most

EXERCISE B

- 11. Is any of these books yours?
- **12.** Several of us is going to the dance together in a limousine.

- **13.** Neither of the horses are available to ride.
- 14. *C*
- **15.** One of the large pieces of cantaloupe are enough to satisfy my sweet tooth.

Compound Subjects A, p. 99

EXERCISE A

1. was

4. is

2. were

5. is

3. were

EXERCISE B

Student responses may vary slightly.

- **6.** Either Elena is entering tomorrow's marathon, or one of her sisters is entering it.
- **7.** The tools don't fit into the back of the van, nor does the lumber fit.
- **8.** My voice coach and greatest supporter is Miriam Goldstein.
- **9.** Neither the rain nor the music was a great addition to our picnic.
- **10.** Do the juniors or the seniors share your lunch period?

Compound Subjects B, p. 100

EXERCISE **A**

1. teach

6. makes

2. are

- **7.** is
- 3. present
- 8. expect

4. are

9. are

5. fall

10. is

- Thrilling rides and a tall roller coaster make makes this amusement park enjoyable.
- **12.** Either the water rides or the new roller coaster are down that path.
- **13.** Neither Roger nor the twins want to ride the tallest roller coaster.
- **14.** Ted and Natalie is going to the food court.
- **15.** Two drinks or a sandwich cost about the same.

Other Problems in Agreement A, p. 101

EXERCISE A

1. is

6. are

2. has

7. was

3. is

8. divides

4. are

9. are

- 5. meets
- **10.** voices

EXERCISE B

- **11.** The faculty is in their classrooms.
- **12.** My whole family were eager to meet its new neighbors.
- **13.** A large number has received their rebates in the mail.
- **14.** The softball team is working in pairs during today's practice.
- **15.** The jury is silently filing one by one into the jury box.
- **16.** The club welcome Ms. Perez, our guest speaker.
- 17. Is staff given discounts on supplies?
- **18.** A majority of the students have met with their guidance counselors.
- **19.** A flock of geese are flying overhead.
- **20.** The local police squad protects the entire neighborhood.

Other Problems in Agreement B, p. 102

EXERCISE A

- **1.** <u>Chelsea</u> and <u>Juan</u> was the favorite couple at the dance.
- **2.** Here is the beads for the handmade bracelet.
- **3.** The <u>winners</u> are a secret until the ceremony.
- **4.** When is the times for the school play auditions?
- **5.** There are several reasons for my admiration of my mom.
- **6.** The <u>walls</u> of the house is adobe.

- 7. What's the results of your talk with Joey?
- **8.** The late-night "intruder" were only Dave and Phillip.
- **9.** Where are my box of oil paints?
- **10.** The doctor's first <u>priority</u> was the patients in the waiting room.

EXERCISE B

There's rumors about treasure buried in the hills behind my house. Long ago in the Old West, when bandits on horseback was a part of life, bandits rode through this area. Here are a book of stories about events from that time. The stories in the book is fiction, of course, but they are inspired by rumors of actual events. There is three hills behind my house—do you see them out the window? A chest of gold and gems are what I believe is hidden there. Here's maps of the area, and they show a cave in the tallest hill. As the rumor goes, this cave were the living quarters for three bandits. They hid their treasure chest in the cave one night. Unfortunately for them, jail cells was their home the next night! The bandits were captured, but there were no evidence of their treasure. It has never been found.

Other Problems in Agreement C, p. 103

EXERCISE **A**

1. are

6. is

2. is

7. is

3. was

8. fills

4. make

9. is

5. is

10. want

- **11.** Three quarters of the flour have been added to the cake batter.
- **12.** Around four years are needed to earn a typical college degree.

- **13.** Five kilometers is the distance between your ranch and the nearest town.
- **14.** Two pints fill a one-quart jar.
- **15.** Two months of her vacation was quite warm: June and July.
- **16.** Two thirds of the fruit salad are eaten already.
- **17.** Three hours are enough time for test preparation.
- **18.** The number of candidates for class president is surprisingly large.
- **19.** Six dollars is neatly arranged on the table.
- **20.** Sixteen ounces equal one pound.

Other Problems in Agreement D, p. 104

EXERCISE A

1. enjoys

6. are

2. has

- **7.** has
- 3. centers
- **8.** are

- **4.** were
- **9.** was

5. is

10. is

EXERCISE **B**

- **11.** The French mime Marcel Marceau, who was born in 1923, performs with graceful simplicity.
- **12.** He studied at the School of Dramatic Art of the Sarah Bernhardt Theatre, which are in Paris.
- **13.** Every fan and film student surely recognize his much-loved character Bip.
- **14.** A group of mimes and Marceau, who were their leader, formed a mime troupe.
- **15.** In the 1950s, many a country around the was world were host to Marceau's mime group.

Other Problems in Agreement E, p. 105

EXERCISE A

- 1. doesn't
- 6. don't

2. don't

7. Don't

3. don't

- 8. don't
- 4. doesn't
- 9. doesn't

5. don't

10. don't

EXERCISE B

- **11.** "Friends doesn't keep secrets from one another," said Matthew.
- 12. Rainy days don't depress me in the least.
- doesn't

 13. Fortunately, Mom don't suspect the surprise birthday party.
- **14.** You doesn't have to drive; I will.
- **15.** The football players doesn't have another game until next Friday.
- **16.** Mr. Rodriguez, I doesn't mind mowing your lawn along with my own.
- 17. Why doesn't clocks run counterclockwise?
- **18.** Some birds don't fly south for the winter.
- **19.** For the party tonight, Antoine don't have any rap music.
- **20.** The newspaper don't have a report of the fire at the waffle house.

Other Problems in Agreement F, p. 106

- **1.** Lord of the Flies were my favorite book last year.
- **2.** New Braunfels are a town on the Guadalupe River in Texas.
- **3.** Molasses are delicious in homemade gingerbread.
- **4.** "Free Fantasia: Tiger Flowers" contain memorable phrases such as "paradise of ironies."
- **5.** The Birds are a 1963 film directed by Alfred Hitchcock.

- **6.** Mathematics challenge me to think creatively about solving problems.
- **7.** My eyeglasses are smudged from the dog's enthusiastic greeting.
- **8.** Is electronics Mike's specialty?
- **9.** Copies and Parcels are advertising student rates on photocopies.
- **10.** The United States is part of North America.
- **11.** Global news are on at 6:00 each morning and at 10:00 each night.
- **12.** *Buffaloes in Combat* was painted in India in the late sixteenth century.
- **13.** Are civics being offered in this high school every term?
- **14.** Of all sporting events, the Olympics is the most exciting to watch.
- **15.** "The Hills," by George Oppen, are written in first and second person.
- **16.** "Old Times" is one of the songs on a CD by Stevie Ray Vaughan and Albert King.
- **17.** Gymnastics are my passion.
- **18.** Are pliers the right tool for this project?
- **19.** Diego Rivera's *The Riches of California* are quite large, measuring 22 by 13 feet.
- **20.** Expensive binoculars hangs around the neck of the coast guard captain.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Number and Gender, p. 107

- **1.** The volleyball players are getting (her, their) new jerseys today.
- **2.** The maintenance worker swept the surface of the court and then polished (*it*, *him*).
- **3.** When Sandra decided to try out for cheerleader, (*she*, *it*) began practicing immediately.

- **4.** Before practice began, the swimmers talked among (himself, themselves).
- **5.** The soccer team's bus has messages written in shoe polish on (*their*, *its*) windows.
- **6.** I spoke to Aaron, and (*he*, *they*) will be happy to be the team's pitcher.
- **7.** At the sporting goods store, Megan selected new tennis balls and a hat for (*itself*, *herself*).
- **8.** (Leon and Marcos committed (<u>themselves</u>, himself) to a daily three-mile run.
- **9.** When I saw Oscar and Phina near the soccer field, I called out to (*it*, *them*).
- **10.** After the rock climbers checked the equipment, (*he*, *they*) began the steep ascent.
- **11.** The basketball hoop outside has icicles hanging from (*its*, *their*) rim.
- **12.** When I last saw Katrina (they, she) was over by the batting cages.
- **13.** During the game the girls on the other team looked to (*their*, *her*) coach for direction.
- **14.** Centerville High's students have dedicated (*itself*, *themselves*) to preserving the environment.
- **15.** Kyle has made a good reputation for (*itself*, *himself*) as team captain.
- **16.** Eric decided not to play football this year; instead, (*he*, they) will play golf.
- **17.** Because the scoreboard wasn't working properly, Mr. Ruiz repaired (them, it).
- **18.** If you want to borrow Mindy's tennis racket, you'll have to ask (*her, it*) yourself.
- **19.** (Jamal) was proud that (*it*, <u>he</u>) made the tiebreaking point.
- **20.** The team's mascot an articulate parrot, often talks to (*themselves*, *itself*).

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Indefinite Pronouns, p. 108

EXERCISE

- **1.** Everything in the bargain bin should have (*its*, *their*) original price tag removed.
- **2.** Some of the cookies had tooth marks on (*it*, *them*).
- **3.** One of the campers on the father-son camping trip shared (*his*, *their*) food with me.
- **4.** (All) of the flower bed was overgrown, so I bent down to weed (*it*, them).
- **5.** Something lay on the sidewalk near the mailboxes, and (*it*, *they*) sparkled in the sun.
- **6.** (Either) of the girls in our carpool could have left (*her*, *their*) backpack in our car.
- **7.** Since some of the music sounded familiar, I knew I had heard (*it*, *them*) before.
- **8.** I saw that most of the sodas and sports drinks listed sugar in (*its*, *their*) ingredients.
- **9.** Few of the boxes in the supply closet have labels on (*them*, *it*).
- **10.** (Many) of the pipes were not covered before the cold weather, so (*it*, *they*) froze.
- **11.** Most of the stones had unique patterns and textures on (*their*, *its*) surfaces.
- **12.** Everybody voted for (*his or her*, *their*) favorite performer in the talent show.
- **13.** Both of the trees in front of the school have begun losing (*its, their*) leaves for the winter.
- **14.** Some of the pastries are homemade by Jitu, who delivers (*it*, *them*) each morning.
- **15.** All of the bookcases in the library have Dewey decimal numbers marked on (*it*, *them*).
- **16.** None of the volunteers at the hospital had met (his or her, their) new director yet.
- **17.** Most of the money had writing on (them, it).

- **18.** (Any of my friends could have given me the note during (*their*, *his or her*) break.
- **19.** Several of the authors were available to autograph copies of (*their*, *his or her*) books.
- **20.** Neither of my cats will let (*itself*, *themselves*) be petted by strangers.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Compound Subjects, p. 109

EXERCISE A

- **1.** The sofa and lamp should be placed in (*its*, *their*) proper positions on stage.
- **2.** The stagehand and the carpenter worked carefully on (*his or her, their*) assignments.
- **3.** The director or assistant director left (*his or her, their*) notes on the refreshment table.
- **4.** Aparent or sibling of an actor will be given a discount on (*his or her, their*) ticket.
- **5.** The musicians and costume designers prepared (himself or herself, themselves) for opening night.
- **6.** The second spotlight or the third spotlight needs (*their*, *its*) bulb replaced.
- **7.** Neither Wendy nor Margaret had considered (herself, themselves) an actor until now.
- **8.** The lead character and the supporting character delivered (his or her, their) lines flawlessly.
- **9.** Cheese and crackers will be served at the cast party; (*it*, *they*) will be provided by a caterer.
- **10.** Actors and stagehands posed for (*their*, *his or her*) photograph.

EXERCISE **B**

Crabs and sea gulls had made its homes in the sand, grass, and rocks by the water. A seashell or a starfish occasionally dotted the beach where

the tide had left it. Swimmers and surfers enterthemselves
tained himself in the water. Near a large sand
dune, a child and her grandmother built herself
a sand castle. Neither Carrie nor Rowan
his or her
remembered to eat their lunch. The sandwiches
their
and cookies remained in its wrappings while
the photographers enthusiastically roamed the
beach looking for the next photographic scene.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Collective Nouns, p. 110

EXERCISE A

1. their

- **6.** their
- **2.** their [*or* its]
- 7. their

3. their

8. their

4. their

- 9. itself
- **5.** themselves
- 10. their

EXERCISE B

- **11.** The team would like to welcome their newest member, Chris.
- **12.** An army of men and women are setting up their its campsites.
- **13.** The class applauded its guest lecturer.
- **14.** The flock built its nests in some of the larger trees near the lake.
- **15.** During the crisis the group remained loyal their to its fellow members.
- **16.** Beneath the surface of the water, a school of fish made its way toward shore.
- **17.** After the team's victory, the cheerleading its squad performed their final cheer.
- **18.** After the dedication ceremony, the crowd made their way to the exits.
- **19.** The assembly is holding their applause until the end of the show.
- **20.** Before the audience had taken its seats, the filmstrip began to roll.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Other Problems A, p. 111

EXERCISE

- 1. them
- **11.** It

2. it

12. It

3. Its

13. Its

4. it

14. it

5. it

15. That

6. their

16. them

7. it

17. it

8. it

18. That

9. it

19. it

10. this

20. That

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement: Other Problems B, p. 112

- 1. These are the teenagers who spent their afternoon tutoring younger kids.
- **2.** The sandwiches that have the crusts still on _____ are made with rye bread.
- 3. The sales associates who meet

 their sales quotas will receive a bonus.
- 4. The fax machine, which is on ______ stand in the corner, needs a new ink cartridge.
- **5.** The running shoes that had reflective strips on _____ were the ones I bought.
- **6.** Several people who desperately wanted tickets took ______ place in line early.
- 7. The next-door neighbors, who hired me to "house sit" <u>their</u> house, are on vacation.
- **8.** Lisa, who spent _____ winter break in Florida, came back to school with a tan.

9.	At the discount bookstore, I found several						
	books that had authors' signatures in						
	them						
10.	The movie, which featured Tom Hanks in						
	leading role, was a success.						
11.	Sheila's parents, who are proud of						
	<u>their</u> daughter, usually attend her						
	debate competitions.						
12.	The envelopes that have stamps on						
	themare ready to mail.						
13.	The painting that needsits						
	frame dusted is in the corner.						
14.	The first poem that I memorized in						
	entirety is "Stopping by						
	Woods on a Snowy Evening."						
15.	• These posters, which have important infor						
	mation on, will be hung in						
	the halls.						
16.	The flowers that have thorns on						
	should be trimmed carefully.						
17.	The keys, which normally hung from						
	hook in the kitchen, were						
	nowhere to be found.						
18.	Musicians who aren't afraid to take						
	<u>themselves</u> seriously usually excel.						
19.	A brown spider, which spunits						
	web in a corner, lay in wait for passing						
	insects.						
20.	Brandon, who takes <u>his</u> dog for						
	a run each morning before school, invited						
	me to come along.						
Review A: Subject-Verb Agreement, p. 113							

1. Today almost no farm child knows how to harness a team of horses.

EXERCISE A

- 2. Sixty years ago, a horse or a mule was essential for farming.
- 3. Most farm machines at that time were literally "horsepowered."
- **4.** Only about one farm in ten was equipped with tractors.
- **5.** Each farmer in this part of the country was proud of his or her horses.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** is **11.** is
- **7.** has **12.** was
- **8.** are **13.** are
- **9.** is **14.** was
- **10.** Is **15.** are

Review B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement, p. 114

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Each boy in Troop 95 spends some of his free time working at the recycling center.
- **2.** Rudi or one of her sisters is responsible for washing the dishes.
- **3.** This green butterfly, like that blue one, makes its home primarily in South America.
- **4.** A stray cat or dog frequently finds its way to my door.
- 5. Each contestant who answered his or her questions correctly won prizes.

- **6.** Many of the citizens have already paid (his or her, their) taxes.
- 7. (Each of the committee members has voiced (his or her, their) opinion.
- 8. Alonzo and I planted the seeds and watered (*it*, *them*) carefully.
- 9. Neither Darlene nor Naomi) has finished (her, their) term paper yet.
- **10.** Because Luis is allergic to eggs, he avoids eating (it, them).

Driginal content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

- **11.** Each of the lost animals was returned to (*its, their*) owner.
- **12.** Someone in the stands started stamping (*his or her, their*) feet loudly.
- **13.** All of the workers were satisfied with (*his or her*, *their*) pay raises.
- **14.** Evergreens are trees that do not shed (*its*, *their*) foliage in the fall.
- **15.** Neither of the co-captains of the women's tennis team won (*her, their*) match.

Review C: Agreement, p. 115

EXERCISE

- 1. Neither potatoes nor rice were my favorite dish.
- 2. (
- **3.** Either Marisa or he are going to be the delegate to the conference.
- **4.** One of the boys left their raincoat on the bus.
- **5.** Where is the gifts you bought?
- 6.
- **7.** His feelings after the defeat was a combination of anger and disbelief.
- **8.** Each of the delegates will pay their own expenses.
- **9.** There was large quantities of surplus wheat in the grain elevators.
- **10.** Two thirds of the day were spent getting the car repaired.
- **11.** Neither Marco nor Lisette want to go fishing this afternoon.

- **12.** *C*
- **13.** Their hopes for a successful play was shattered by poor reviews.
- **14.** Each of the students chose their own project.
- **15.** A large crowd of people was clapping their hands and cheering.
- **16.** There is always at least two librarians at the reference desk.
- **17.** Every understudy who plan to succeed must be ready to perform at a moment's notice.
- **18.** Not one of my classmates were prepared for the surprise quiz.
- **19.** Some of the coins on the table belongs to me.
- 20. 🤇

Review D: Agreement, p. 116

EXERCISE

- **1.** its
- **11.** his or her
- **2.** doesn't
- **12.** its
- **3.** his or her
- **13.** is
- **4.** There are
- **14.** they
- **5.** Doesn't
- **15.** was

6. enjoy

- **16.** their
- 7. his or her
- **17.** their

8. was

18. are

9. is

19. its

10. has

20. was

Chapter 6: Using Pronouns Correctly, pp. 117–137

Case Forms of Personal Pronouns, p. 117 EXERCISE A

- 3rd—P—5

 1. Cokie Roberts began <u>her</u> career in broadcasting over thirty years ago.
- **2.** We recently saw <u>her</u> on a panel discussion regarding election procedures.

 3rd—P—PL
- **3.** Several candidates gave <u>their</u> opinions concerning the primaries.
- 4. Ms. Roberts posed questions to each of them.
- **5.** <u>I</u> was extremely impressed with her ability to focus on the issues.
- **6.** Our state has scheduled <u>its</u> primary for March 10.
- 7. The program helped me understand the importance of primaries.
- **8.** I've made up <u>my</u> mind regarding the candidates, too.
- 9. Our current senator has served for two terms.
- **10.** Will you be giving him your support, Gina?

EXERCISE B

- **11.** you **13.** our **15.** me
- **12.** their **14.** they

The Nominative Case A, p. 118

EXERCISE A

- 1. The man who sponsored the radio marathon was him.
- **2.** My brother and <u>me</u> went on a camping trip.
- **3.** Both her aunt and <u>she</u> speak fluent Chinese.
- **4.** The junior class and <u>us</u> will sponsor the annual book fair.
- **5.** Jim and them received scholarships from the Rotary Club.

- **6.** The panelists selected for the quiz show may have been Luis and her.
- **7.** It wasn't <u>I</u> who left the baseball equipment out on the field.
- **8.** Was the winner of the tournament Augusta or him?
- **9.** Raul and her have read almost every novel by Ernest Hemingway.
- **10.** After the concert, Pia and them want to meet in the parking lot.

EXERCISE B

Among fiction lovers who appreciate Dorothy Parker are we. Parker was a famous American writer and critic. Her and her colleagues formed a literary circle that met regularly at the Algonquin Hotel in New York City. It was them who became known as the Algonquin Round Table. They were a witty, extremely talented group. Parker was perhaps the wittiest of all. For example, it was her who wanted her gravestone to read, "Pardon my dust." While the three of us were researching Parker, we collected other witty comments. We discovered a comment Parker made regarding Katharine Hepburn's performance in a play. Parker said that Hepburn "ran the gamut of emotions from A to B." All in all, us lovers of sarcasm consider Parker a genius.

The Nominative Case B, p. 119

EXERCISE

Ms. Rosewood said, "Marcy, are <u>gov</u> ready with your report? It is <u>gov</u> who are next, and <u>we</u> are interested in your topic."

Marcy stood before the class and said, "Most people enjoy listening to the radio, but

they may not know who invented FM

broadcasting. Are __gov _ curious? Well, ____ can tell about this amazing inventor. Have __gov _ heard of Edwin H. Armstrong? It is ___ he __ who made the crucial discoveries and filed the patents that made FM broadcasting possible.

"First, _____ will tell you about Armstrong's background. While still a teenager, _____ he ____ decided to become an inventor and immediately began work in the attic of his house. In college, _____ he ____ experimented with wireless transmission and earned a gold medal from the Institute of Radio Engineers for the discovery of the feedback circuit in wireless transmission. Until _____ he ____ developed this circuit, wireless signals were barely audible using earphones; _____ they ____ were certainly not audible from across a room.

"In 1933, Armstrong filed four patents.

They were for circuits that comprised a new radio system. Because the system required changes in transmitters and receivers, ____it was not an immediate success. Armstrong spent more than \$300,000 of his own money building the first full-scale FM station. The radio industry became interested, and ____it slowly accepted and implemented Armstrong's technology.

"Throughout his life Armstrong was involved in patent suits brought by rival inventors. _______ gradually consumed his money and his spirit, and in 1954, _______ passed away. Despite this tragedy, you and _______ have benefited from Armstrong's work. It is _______ radio enthusiasts of the twenty-first century who enjoy Armstrong's twentieth-century invention."

The Objective Case A, p. 120

EXERCISE A

- **1.** me **5.** him
 - im **8.** us
- **2.** him **6.** us
- **9.** me **10.** me

her
 me

EXERCISE B

- 11. Fran sent Marlo and be a letter.
- 12. Ms. Bonetta told Sasha and Labout the sale.

7. them

- **13.** To <u>us</u>, the price of admission seems rather high.
- **14.** Do Mom and Dad know that I'll be home after both of they?
- **15.** The costume designer has finally given <u>him</u> his costume for the play.

The Objective Case B, p. 121

EXERCISE **A**

Answers may vary.

- **1.** me
- **5.** her
- 8. them

- 2. her
- **6.** me
- **9.** me

- **3.** them
- **7.** her
- **10.** him

4. him

EXERCISE B

Patti continually searches for interesting sewing projects and then sews them beautifully. For example, she not only sewed the curtains in them her room, but she designed they and a matching quilt herself. Tell she or her dad your favorite colors, and Patti will use them in a project for you. Whenever my friends and I are at Patti's them house, her dad proudly shows they and I her latest accomplishments. Patti may act embarrassed, but I know she appreciates the admiration from her dad and we. She is currently working on customized birthday gifts for you him and he. Once, I gave Patti one of my favorite formal dresses, which I had outgrown. She made two fancy, decorative pillows out of it.

Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns, p. 122

EXERCISE A

- 1. them
- **5.** me
- **8.** us

- **2.** We
- **6.** her
- **9.** me

- **3.** she
- **7.** her
- **10.** they

4. him

EXERCISE B

- **11.** The argument between Tomás and he soon grew into a major contest between rival factions.
- **12.** If it had not been for Luis and she, the fund-raising project would have failed.
- 13. *C*
- **14.** It is not fair to let all the boys except they go on a holiday.
- **15.** Before going on the trip, you need written permission from your parents and L.

The Possessive Case, p. 123

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** Yours
- 8. mine
- **15.** hers

- **2.** his
- **9.** my
- **16.** our

- **3.** Her
- **10.** your
- **17.** his

- **4.** My
- 11. yours
- 18. their

- 5. their
- **12.** our
- **19.** her

- **6.** its
- **13.** my
- **20.** his

- 7. Their
- 14. Theirs

Case Forms A, p. 124

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** she
- **5.** me
- **8.** us

- **2.** He
- **6.** them
- **9.** Mine

- **3.** me
- **7.** her
- **10.** Your

4. your

Case Forms B, p. 125

EXERCISE

1. For science class, Polly and <u>me</u> read an article about swans.

- **2.** The winners of the tournament will be either the Eagles or <u>we</u>.
- **3.** <u>Him</u> hitting a home run was the highlight of the game.
- **4.** The clay sculpture in the student art exhibit mine is my.
- **5.** As they skated in the ice rink, Ken took Rhonda's hand in his.
- **6.** Can you give the committee or <u>we</u> a hint about the outcome of the election?
- **7.** The Carsons are working in <u>our</u> community garden.
- **8.** The similarities between you and <u>Fare</u> numerous.
- **9.** Of all the sophomores, only Shane and her have lockers near the seniors.
- **10.** Monique will be meeting Keller and <u>he</u> at the carnival on Saturday.

Who and Whom, p. 126

EXERCISE A

- **1.** I don't know to whom I should give my extra ticket.
- **2.** Wasn't Charles Dickens the author who wrote *Oliver Twist*?
- **3.** I've just figured out who the person in the gorilla costume is.
- **4.** Mario is the student whom the committee selected for the award.
- **5.** Billie Holiday, whom my parents greatly admire, was a famous singer.
- **6.** Everyone wondered who the new cheerleader would be.
- **7.** We will invite whomever Jane wants.
- **8.** I wonder who gave the anonymous donation to the school.

Original content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor.

9.	Dad will lend the car to w	5 hoever will wash	5.	Have you ever said to		
	it this weekend.			, "Am I awake, or am		
10.	I saw a car in my drivewa	v, and wondered		I dreaming?"		
	who was there.			I planned the entire Super Bowl party		
EXE	RCISE B			INT myself		
		whom	7	The mayor <u>himself [or herself]</u> visited		
12.	whom 15.	whom	7.	·		
13.	who			my school during our seminar on city		
Apı	positives, p. 127			government.		
	RCISE A		8.	Roy rebuilt a motorcycle for		
1.	her 5. she	8. us		himself and his brother.		
2.	we 6. we	9. she	9.	My friends and have		
3.	I 7. her	10. them		plans for the evening.		
4.	him		10.	We <u>ourselves</u> are responsible		
EXE	RCISE B	ha		for our own destiny.		
11.	The two campers, Jill and	him, found an	11.	Shaleen, Nick, and Juan frightened		
	abandoned mine shaft.			themselves with their own ghost		
12.	We sophomores and they	are scheduled for		stories.		
	yearbook pictures this week.			It is they <u>themselves</u> who must		
13.	3. My relatives, Aunt Jessica and they, are			pay for the trip.		
	helping me create a family tree.					
14.	4. The toddler sat happily between his sisters,			Several of us promised Ourselves that we would		
• ••	Phoebe and she, at the circ					
1 =				always remain loyal to each other.		
15.	5. Ask the recreation directors, Meredith and her		14.	After recuperating from the flu, Josh was		
	she, about the canoe outin	.g.		<u>himself</u> again.		
	lexive and Intensive Prono	-	15.	We sophomores congratulated		
	rcise Answers to items 9, 16 they must be personal pronor			<u>ourselves</u> on winning the Spirit		
	Coach Woodard taught us			Contest at the pep rally.		
	dence in <u>PEF</u>		16.	Angie and made a		
2	Julie committed			homemade vegetarian pizza.		
۷.	weekly piano lessons.	το	17.	Who said, "If you want something done		
•	7 1	A 1 1 3 6 1 .		right, do it <u>yourself</u> "?		
3.		an went straight to Ms. Ashok Mehta				
	herself with	n his question.		cleaned the kitchen		
4.	I pushed IZEF myself	an extra	10			
	mile on the treadmill.		٠,٠	I said to Cheryl and James, "You are responsible for		
				are responsible for		

catering the reception."

20. Our parents and ______ enjoyed the rafting trip.

Pronouns in Incomplete Constructions, p. 129

EXERCISE

- **1.** Todd runs with the dog more than I run with the dog.
- **2.** The judges liked Meg's routine less than they liked mine.
- **3.** I waited on the elderly customer before I waited on her.
- **4.** We play more tournaments than they play.
- **5.** I love chocolate more than you love it.
- **6.** The car pool picked up RayAnn before it picked up him.
- **7.** Kiki lives nearer the school than we live.
- **8.** Is Dan's pony in as many shows as hers is?
- **9.** You can wash our car after you wash theirs.
- **10.** I value friendship as much as he values it.

Clear Pronoun Reference A, p. 130

EXERCISE

Students' revisions may vary.

- 1. Jill was in town, and Ida saw her.
- **2.** Hal told Milo that Milo's brother was late.
- **3.** Everyone stayed home because the streets are coated with ice.
- **4.** We swam in the river; swimming in the river is always fun.
- **5.** Jerry didn't speak to Roberto the last time Jerry saw him.
- **6.** Seeing the hat and coat in the window, I bought the hat.
- **7.** That today is payday means I go to the bank.
- **8.** Feeding our parakeets is my daily responsibility.
- **9.** Jen called me as soon as she and Mom arrived at the hotel.
- **10.** Dave saw Trent in the crowded diner when Trent stood up.

Clear Pronoun Reference B, p. 131

EXERCISE

Students' revisions may vary.

- **1.** I scattered birdseed in the backyard, but the birds haven't eaten it yet.
- **2.** Iowa produces about ten percent of our nation's food supply.
- **3.** My computer screen reflected the person standing behind me.
- **4.** Lloyd is a farmer. Some of the crops he grows are peanuts and potatoes.
- **5.** We are traveling to New Zealand. New Zealanders speak English.
- **6.** The atlas confirmed my guess that Mississauga is a Canadian city.
- **7.** The President of the United States is guarded carefully.
- **8.** The auto parts shop is having a sale.
- **9.** The Web site guides you through the purchase process.
- **10.** Lee has won awards for some of his paintings.

Clear Pronoun Reference C, p. 132

EXERCISE

Students' revisions may vary.

- **1.** The bakery smells wonderful. Some of the baked goods are tarts and bread.
- **2.** Flying kites with Mel this weekend should be fun.
- **3.** The glossary said that a simile is a comparison using *like* or *as*.
- **4.** Before Bill met Chuck, Bill had never skydived.
- **5.** Because Eric can think of no one but Marcia, he must be in love.
- **6.** Every summer my town holds a rose festival.
- **7.** After seeing Faith's vases and Carola's bowls in pottery class, I bought one of Faith's works.
- **8.** I'm taking a horseback riding class. The horses are gentle and friendly.

- **9.** Why do commercials interrupt regular TV news programs?
- **10.** Betsy and Kim worked in the store all weekend because Kim's mom needed the help.

Clear Pronoun Reference D, p. 133

EXERCISE

Students' revisions may vary.

- **1.** Larry called Trevor while Trevor was at karate practice.
- **2.** I like finding really nice items at a flea market.
- **3.** Steven went fishing. Fishing is his favorite pastime.
- **4.** I am always honest with my friends, but being honest isn't always easy.
- **5.** Before Lewis entered tenth grade with William, Lewis went to a different school.
- **6.** Jeremy is replacing loose shingles on the roof. The project should be finished soon.
- **7.** In pioneer times in America, people generally traveled by horse and buggy.
- **8.** My mom is a computer programmer. One of the programming languages that she knows is called Java.
- **9.** I filled the gas tank. The full tank will allow us to reach Dallas with no problem.
- **10.** The jewelry box was full. One of the pieces it held was a ruby ring.

Review A: Case Forms, p. 134

EXERCISE A

- **1.** I
- **5.** who
- **8.** me

- us
 me
- 6. we7. She
- 9. she
 10. I

4. whom

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Where are Parvis and him?
- **12.** Did you invite Liza Beth and she?
- 13. *C*
- **14.** He is a man who you can trust.
- **15.** His sister is a better student than him.

- **16.** There was no argument between Bianca me and myself.
- **17.** The committee has not decided whom should be in charge.
- **18.** Angelo and him should have known better.
- **19.** Did she prepare dinner for her friends and you yourself?
- **20.** We saw you and they at the game.

Review B: Clear Reference, p. 135

EXERCISE

Students' revisions may vary.

- 1. Damon's job at the YMCA is interesting.
- **2.** After seeing Trisha and Mindy in the mall, I called Trisha.
- **3.** Models often must stand perfectly still.
- **4.** Planting a backyard garden is fun.
- **5.** Since Petra is at an audition, she can't study with us.
- **6.** I did my math homework carefully; some of the problems were difficult.
- **7.** After reading Craig's mystery story and Bruce's science fiction story, the editor bought Craig's work for the next issue.
- **8.** I live near an apple orchard.
- **9.** The commercial said the sale continues through Friday.
- **10.** I relax by reading a magazine. Magazines keep me updated on sports and fashion topics.

Review C: Case Forms and Clear Reference, p. 136

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. You and him should come over after dinner.
- **Who 2.** Whom shall I say is calling?
- **3.** You work more carefully than me.
- **4.** Are Lanette and her in the same homeroom?

- No one was surprised when both you and she her made the team.
- 6. *C*
- **7.** Did the librarian give you and he a reading list?
- **8.** You and him can bring in the groceries now, thank you.
- **9.** Between you and $\frac{1}{4}$, we don't need their help.
- **10.** I don't know who you should ask about the quiz.

EXERCISE B

Students' revisions may vary.

- **11.** I eat a vegetarian diet. One of the dishes I like best is tofu with vegetables.
- **12.** Annette's performance in the talent show should be entertaining.
- **13.** The *paparazzi* may become intrusive to the famous.
- **14.** Darnell spoke to Tyrone before Tyrone began football practice.
- **15.** That Cliff is ambidextrous means he can use both hands equally well.

Review D: Case Forms and Clear Reference, p. 137

EXERCISE A

- 1. to you and me
- 2. the girl whom we saw
- **3.** Max and he already left.
- **4.** Ask him rather than me.
- **5.** They like the same books as we.

EXERCISE B

Students' revisions may vary.

- **6.** Greg asked Frank if Frank's paycheck had been left in the car.
- **7.** The article describes a hurricane's destructive power.
- **8.** Freddie is a talented painter; one of his paintings hangs in the hall.
- **9.** Because Phina creates mosaic tables, she collects broken tiles.
- **10.** That I had no phone messages was a disappointment.

Original content Copyight 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 7: Using Verbs Correctly, pp. 138–161

The Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 138

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. (was) whispering
- 2. (has) worn
- 3. enumerate
- 4. (was) making
- 5. announced

EXERCISE B

6. P-P **13.** B **20.** PT **14.** PT-P **21.** P-P **7.** PT 8. PT-P **15.** PT **22.** PT-P **16.** P-P **23.** B **9.** B **10.** PT-P **17.** B **24.** PT **18.** PT-P 25. PT-P **11.** P-P

19. P-P

Regular Verbs, p. 139

EXERCISE A

12. PT

arrived
 painted
 surrounded
 faced
 looked
 argued
 admired
 carved
 returned

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Frantically, they search the attic and basement. (past)
- **12.** Unfortunately, the speaker strays from the main point. (*past*)
- has [or had] answered13. Chen answers-Sue's letter within a week.(past participle)
- has [or had] calmed

 14. Rebecca finally calms the frightened neighbor. (past participle)
- leaped (or leapt or lept)15. Madeline gleefully leaps over puddles of melted snow. (past)

Irregular Verbs A, p. 140

EXERCISE A

sung
 taken
 stolen
 thrown
 written
 came
 frozen
 ran

EXERCISE B

- **11.** During shipping, part of the package's wrapping was tore.
- **12.** My best friend bringed me a souvenir from his summer travels in Europe.
- **13.** After the election, I heard the results on the radio.
- **14.** The priest had rang the bells just after daybreak.
- **15.** On the fishing trip last weekend, Kenneth caught catched a perch and a catfish.

Irregular Verbs B, p. 141

EXERCISE A

went
 sung
 told
 hit
 chosen
 knew
 left
 built
 let

EXERCISE B Answers may vary.

- **11.** These shoes <u>costed</u> too much.
- **12.** A flock of birds <u>flied</u> overhead just before sunset yesterday.
- eaten

 13. I have <u>ate</u> already.
- **14.** Who put these muddy shoes on the carpet?
- **15.** Both boxers <u>fighted</u> hard in the ring.
- **16.** Vicky has wore the same hat two days in a row.

- **17.** After an hour's worth of rock climbing, I become had became thirsty.
- **18.** Well before her birthday, I had send Grandmother a card.
- **19.** No one has ever cut my hair this attractively before!
- **20.** Final exams have began.

Irregular Verbs C, p. 142

EXERCISE **A**

1. bent

6. knew

2. made

7. spent

3. said

8. sought

4. found

9. slept

5. had

10. hidden

EXERCISE B Answers may vary.

- **11.** After a brief appearance, the whale gone back out to sea.
- **12.** The mother duck leaded her ducklings to the water.
- **13.** By the end of my first day on the job, I had sold sell several jet skis and some snorkeling equipment.
- **14.** For years a friendly manatee has swam in the bay behind my house.
- **15.** During a sudden storm, a ship full of swords, armor, and other antiques had sank near those rocks.
- **16.** I have dove with a team of professional divers many times.
- **17.** Over time, water has wore all rough edges from these stones.
- 18. *C*
- **19.** *C*
- **20.** The crew done all their duties according to the schedule.

Irregular Verbs D, p. 143

EXERCISE **A**

1. fallen

6. broke

2. ridden

7. put

3. drank

8. paid

4. took

9. stood

5. burst

10. caught

EXERCISE B

11. bought

16. forgiven

12. dived

17. broke

13. grew

18. saw

14. felt

19. taught

15. got

20. won

Irregular Verbs E, p. 144

EXERCISE A

1. wrote

6. given

2. drank

7. spoke

3. threw

8. ran

4. swam

9. rode

5. froze

10. rang

Exercise B Answers may vary.

- **11.** The players had <u>feel</u> the excitement of the crowd in the stands.
- **12.** At one time I had went to school with one of the players on the opposing team.
- **13.** In the blink of an eye, the player on second had stole third base.
- **14.** An assistant brung water to the thirsty players.
- 15. *C*

Lie and Lay, p. 145

EXERCISE A

1. laying

6. laid

2. lay

7. lying

3. lying

8. laid

4. laid

9. lain

5. lie

10. laid

EXERCISE B

- 11. I could have lain-the rug in Jessie's room.
- **12.** May I lay in the hammock in your backyard?
- **13.** The builder should lie the pane of glass gently across the table for now.
- **14.** Our hosts are laying an assortment of snacks on the coffee table.
- **15.** Those old wagon wheels have laid beside the fence for years.
- **16.** My opponent lay-all her cards on the table.
- **17.** Several coins are laying beside the cash register.
- **18.** Despite the thunder and lightning, Sandra lay peacefully asleep.
- **19.** The clown laid his curly green wig beside the other pieces of his costume.
- **20.** Thomas laid on the beach each morning during his vacation.

Sit and Set, p. 146

EXERCISE A

1. set

6. setting

2. sit

7. sat

3. set

8. sitting

4. sitting

9. sat

5. set

10. set

EXERCISE B

- 11. Beside the oven, a kitchen timer set.
- **12.** An assistant chef sat a carving knife near the smoked ham.
- **13.** She had set on a high stool at the work counter.
- **14.** She is sitting cherry tomatoes around the border of the platter.
- **15.** Eight individual spinach salads are setting on the top shelf of the refrigerator.

- **16.** Tall glasses of ice water had sat on the serving tray for ten minutes.
- **17.** The basket of sourdough bread and the bowl of butter can set-here.
- **18.** Earlier in the day, a pastry chef had sat-a Key lime pie in the dessert case.
- **19.** The asparagus and artichoke dip should not sit too long without refrigeration.
- **20.** The raw potatoes have been setting in a marinade of spices and broth.

Rise and Raise, p. 147

EXERCISE A

1. rising

6. risen

2. rose

7. raise

3. raised

8. raising9. raised

4. rise

10. rose

- raisedEXERCISE B
- **16.** rise

11. raised12. raised

17. raise

13. rose

18. rose

14. risen

19. raised

15. raised

20. rose

Six Troublesome Verbs, p. 148

EXERCISE A

1. lay

6. rose

2. sat

7. lain

3. rise

8. raised

4. laid

9. Lie

5. set

10. risen

- **11.** The theater grew quiet when the curtain rose raised.
- **12.** Julie had just sat something on the shelf.
- **13.** When I set down, Julie brought over a black vase.
- **14.** Gently, she lay the vase on the table.

- **15.** A beautiful sienna vase by Popovi Da was *lying* laying in front of me.
- **16.** We left our lawn furniture setting on the patio.
- **17.** They lain the bricks in a pile next to where we sat the wood.
- 18. *C*
- **19.** When we are rising from bed in the morning, people in China are laying down to sleep.
- **20.** An hour ago he laid down to watch television, but he fell asleep.

Tense A, p. 149

EXERCISE

- 1. We took the bike path through the woods.
- **2.** By noon, they will have practiced for two hours.
- **3.** Francine feels ill.
- **4.** You will succeed if you try.
- **5.** They had arrived before I got there.
- **6.** She <u>has visited</u> China twice in the past three years.
- 7. Charo will be calling when she needs a ride.

 present perfect
- **8.** You <u>have talked</u> on the telephone for two hours!
- **9.** I <u>will be</u> glad to go to the movies with you tonight.
- **10.** For a long time, I <u>believed</u> in good-luck charms.
- **11.** The psychiatrist had been preparing carefully for her next patient.
- **12.** Brandy <u>watches</u> cartoons on Saturday mornings.
- **13.** As of next Friday, I shall have been employed here six months.

future

- **14.** We <u>will be</u> happy with the results of our remodeling project.
- **15.** Glenn is paying the final installment on his layaway purchase.

 present perfect
- **16.** Your horse <u>has gotten</u> into the vegetable garden again.
- **17.** If we keep up this pace, we will reach the campsite well before dark.

 past perfect
- **18.** By midmorning, Nisha <u>had given</u> manicures to six clients.

present perfect

- **19.** The neighbors' Rottweiler <u>has barked</u> all night.
- **20.** By spring break, I <u>will have saved</u> enough money for an airplane ticket to Florida.

Tense B, p. 150

- 1. had been running
- 2. will address
- 3. has concluded
- 4. reviewed
- **5.** goes
- 6. will have worked
- 7. has created
- **8.** had bought
- **9.** was hanging
- 10. will have finished
- 11. washes
- **12.** realized
- 13. had promised
- **14.** will be running
- **15.** have found
- **16.** will have read
- **17.** taught
- 18. had repaired
- **19.** will have finished
- 20. will sew

Consistency of Tense, p. 151

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- Tomorrow night we will go to the concert, will join and Jane joined us.
- **2.** If you have asked me earlier, I would have been able to give you an answer.
- **3.** Ever since Marilu will have become president of the company, sales have increased.
- **4.** My niece Claire had left before Harold arrived arrives.
- **5.** When you are at the store, did you pick up any onions?
- 6. *C*
- **7.** Pascal had been living in Italy for two met months when he was meeting Rosa.
- **8.** What happened to the box of cereal we bought have been buying yesterday?
- 9. 🤇
- **10.** Joel lifted the suitcase and has set it in the overhead bin on the airplane.

Modals A, p. 152

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

1. can

6. may

2. may

7. must

3. might

8. must

4. could

9. could

5. must

10. might

Modals B, p. 153

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

1. ought

6. will

2. Should

7. should

3. would

8. should

4. Will

9. Will

5. shall

10. ought

Modals Review, p. 154

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** shall **11.** might
- 2. should
- **3.** may **13.** could

12. should

- 4. might5. must14. may15. Can
- **6.** could **16.** ough
- 6. could7. can16. ought17. would
- 8. would9. ought17. would18. shall19. could
- **10.** will **20.** will

Active and Passive Voice, p. 155

EXERCISE A

- 1. Janice was told by the doctor to rest.
- **2.** At first, Alfredo was puzzled by the math problem.
- **3.** Po Lan's mother and father <u>encouraged</u> her.
- **4.** The dogwood blossoms <u>were surrounded</u> by bumblebees.
- **5.** Helga's lost kitten was found by a neighbor.
- **6.** Liona was hit by a fast-moving ball.
- 7. Robert Frost wrote "The Road Not Taken."
- **8.** Grazing sheep <u>covered</u> the pasture.
- **9.** The trapeze artist <u>was watched</u> closely by the crowd.
- **10.** The bouquet of flowers <u>was selected</u> by Nahele.

- **11.** The winter winds blew the leaves from the trees.
- 12. The sun temporarily blinded Michael.
- **13.** My cousin repaired the amplifier.
- **14.** College students painted the Kings' house last summer.
- **15.** Angelica decorated the wedding cake with sugar roses.

Using and Revising the Passive Voice, p. 156

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** C. Passive voice emphasizes the receiver of the action.
- **2.** South American Incas, Egyptians, and others practiced mummification.
- **3.** Ancient Egyptian embalmers removed internal organs.
- **4.** At one point in history, embalmers treated and replaced the organs.
- **5.** C. The performer of the action is not known.
- **6.** C. The performer of the action is not known.
- **7.** Apothecaries and healers pounded mummified bodies into "mummy."
- **8.** Apothecaries then gave mummy as medicine.
- **9.** C. The performer of the action is not known.
- **10.** Europeans continued the use of mummy until the 1700s.

Mood, p. 157

EXERCISE

- **1.** If you were called a monster by a lawyer, how would you feel?
- **2.** If the lawyer had thought you committed a crime, would people believe him?
- **3.** Keep these questions in mind as you read *Monster.*
- **4.** It is vital that sixteen-year-old Steve Harmon remain positive throughout his trial.
- **5.** He <u>is accused</u> of playing a role in the fatal shooting of a convenience-store owner.
- **6.** If I <u>were</u> in Steve's place, I would certainly panic.
- 7. <u>Listen</u> to what Steve does to remain calm during the trial.
- **8.** He is an aspiring filmmaker, and he Chronicles the trial in movie script format.

- **9.** I recommend that you <u>try</u> this practice when you are in a stressful situation.
- **10.** Many people <u>realize</u> the therapeutic value of writing about problems.
- **11.** Steve also <u>keeps</u> a journal in which he records thoughts about his life before and after the murder.
- **12.** The movie script and journal entries written by this black teenager <u>form</u> the book that you read.
- **13.** During certain portions of the book, some readers may think that Steve <u>is</u> guilty.
- **14.** Other readers will be sure that Steve is innocent.
- **15.** Christopher Myers, son of the author Walter Dean Myers, <u>illustrated</u> *Monster*.
- **16.** If I were Christopher, I would be proud of working on an award-winning project with my dad.
- **17.** Consider the Michael L. Printz Award.
- **18.** The Young Adult Library Services Association (YALSA) believes that outstanding books for teenagers should be honored.
- **19.** Someone suggested that YALSA <u>consider</u> *Monster* for its Michael L. Printz Award.
- **20.** YALSA believed the suspenseful, realistic *LND Monster* had earned the award.

Review A: The Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 158 EXERCISE A

- [a] The lake had frozen over. [b] The ridden sweater has shrunk. [c] I have rode that horse.
- [a] He begun the fight. [b] Who bought it?[c] They swam well.
- **3.** [a] They have stolen apples. [b] You had driven chosen well. [c] He has drove the tractor.

- **4.** [a] It had broke. [b] He has bought shoes. [c] They had fallen.
- **5.** [a] The bell rung. [b] The boy ran. [c] The teacher saw him.
- **6.** [a] You drank it. [b] We drived there. [c] She ran fast.
- 7. [a] He stole it. [b] The bell rang. [c] She had spoken spoke.
- **8.** [a] We have wrote. [b] She has fallen. [c] It was frozen.
- **9.** [a] You had given. [b] He has went. [c] They have taken.
- 10. [a] We had ridden. [b] It had begun. [c] He chosen has chose.

EXERCISE B

11.	gone	16.	came
12.	threw	17.	sat
13.	took	18.	spoken
14.	saw	19.	taken
15.	ran	20.	did

Review B: Troublesome Verbs and Tense, p. 159 EXERCISE A

- 1. \subset
- **2.** By nine o'clock in the morning, the temperature had raised to ninety-five degrees.
- **3.** A watchdog was laying at the front gate, ready to pounce on any unsuspecting stranger who might approach the house.
- **4.** The man set in a comfortable chair near the fireplace.
- **5.** After 6:00 P.M., the price of movie admission rises raises to eight dollars. [or . . . raises to eight dollars.]
- **6.** Before you leave, please straighten the newspapers that are laying all over the table.
- **7.** *C*

- **8.** We rose the curtain to see if the sun had risen.
- **9.** Having grown tired of wandering around the house, the sick child laid down to rest.
- **10.** The lazy dog would just set there in its favorite spot for hours.

EXERCISE **B**

I [11] had a curious accident one day last summer. Late one afternoon I [12] am riding my bicycle down a busy street when someone opened suddenly [13] opens the door of a parked car right in front of me. The bicycle [14] slammed was thrown into the car door, and I [15] am thrown into the front seat, right next to the driver. When I realized that the driver [17] happens to be one of the science teachers from the high school, I [18] was overcome with embarrassment. Much to my surprise, however, the apologized to me at length and blamed lamed [20] blames himself for being careless. Do you think this incident proves that teachers know they make mistakes, too?

Review C: Principal Parts, Tense, and Voice, p. 160

EXERCISE A

chose
 run
 written
 frozen

3. swum

Exercise B Answers may vary.

- 6. Katherine Davalos Ortega has worked in her family's restaurant and other businesses when she was a small child. <u>Katherine</u>

 Davalos Ortega worked in her family's restaurant and other businesses when she was a small child.
- **7.** *C*

- **8.** As a result, a business career was pursued by her instead. As a result, she pursued a business career instead.
- **9.** By 1975, she will become the first woman president of a California bank. By 1975, she had become the first woman president of a California bank.
- 10. Ms. Ortega, in recognition of her professional abilities, was nominated by President Reagan to be Treasurer of the United States. In recognition of Ms. Ortega's professional abilities, President Reagan nominated her to be Treasurer of the United States.

Review D: Modals and Mood, p. 161

EXERCISE A

Answers may vary.

- 1. would
- **2.** may
- **3.** could
- 4. might
- 5. should

- 6. should
- **7.** Can
- **8.** may
- 9. ought
- **10.** will

- 11. Some people count sheep when they cannot sleep.
- **12.** I think that clouds are more interesting to count.
- **13.** Since I first saw them from an airplane window, clouds have fascinated me.
- **14.** It is vital to my peace of mind that I watch clouds shifting shapes and traveling lazily across the sky.
- 15. Did you know that I have never seen two identical clouds?
- **16.** Think of the shapes of clouds you have observed.
- **17.** If I were a cloud, I would resemble misshapen cotton balls tossed at random into a pile.
- **18.** Just as I do, you may wish you were as carefree as a cloud.
- **19.** My father suggested that I become a meteorologist.
- 20. Please tell me what you think of my pursuing a career as a cloud sculptor.

Driginal content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 8: Using Modifiers Correctly, pp. 162–183

Adjective or Adverb? p. 162

EXERCISE A

- 1. In European fairy tales, a dragon is usually bad.
- **2.** Chinese dragons, however, are said to bring good fortune.
- **3.** During the last Chinese New Year, a dragon moved <u>slowly</u> down the street.
- **4.** I felt <u>bad</u> because I missed seeing the runner carrying the pearl of fire.
- **5.** However, we all clapped <u>loudly</u> as we watched the parade.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Forms of dance contain <u>recognizable</u> elements.
- **7.** The elements enable knowledgeable people to identify the type of dance.
- **8.** A ballet <u>usually</u> includes the elements of music, costume, and scenery.
- **9.** Anna Pavlova (1881–1931) was a famous ballerina from Russia.
- **10.** Pavlova toured <u>widely</u> during her career.
- 11. In the 1910s and 1920s, the ballets of Sergei Diaghilev (1872–1929) were popular.
- **12.** The productions of Diaghilev reflected a skillful collaboration between choreographer, designer, and composer.
- **13.** Professionals are not the <u>only</u> ones who practice ballet.
- **14.** Members of the <u>general</u> public take classes for fun or exercise.
- **15.** Children <u>happily</u> perform *The Nutcracker* at Christmas.

Phrases Used as Modifiers, p. 163

EXERCISE A

- 1. Now is not the time to play games.
- **2.** Professor De La Rosa is writing instructions on the chalkboard.
- **3.** Napping soundly, I did not hear the doorbell ring.
- **4.** The answer to your question is yes.
- **5.** When the streets are slick, drive with caution.
- **6.** <u>Sprinkled with pepper</u>, the mashed potatoes tasted much better.
- **7.** The sea churned too roughly for the windsurfers.
- **8.** The wedding invitation, written in calligraphy, was unusual and quite beautiful.
- **9.** "This is the document to encrypt with the new code," said the military officer.
- **10.** The fan, anchored to the ceiling, provided welcome relief from the heat.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Born in Harlem, Colin Powell is the son of Jamaican immigrants.
- 12. Powell's parents taught him the value of hard work and education.
- **13.** After graduating from college, Powell was commissioned as a second lieutenant in the Army.
- **14.** For heroic achievement in combat, he earned a Bronze Star Medal.
- **15.** Suffering from his own wounds, he had led his battalion to safety.

Clauses Used as Modifiers, p. 164

EXERCISE **A**

1. Before he bought a video from the Web site, Alfred checked other sites for a better price.

- 2. The game show contestant who won the grand prize was the woman from Montana.
- **3.** The first comb that you should use on the horse is the wire currycomb.
- **4.** Regis nibbled on fruit slices while Scott sipped apple juice.
- **5.** Dale studies mathematics and science carefully because he wants to be an engineer.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** <u>After I read *Animal Farm*</u>, I became interested in the life of the author George Orwell.
- **7.** George Orwell is the pen name <u>that Eric</u> Arthur Blair used.
- **8.** Orwell was born to English parents who were living in Bengal, India.
- **9.** Before he became a novelist, Orwell served in the Indian Imperial Police in Burma.
- **10.** The country that is now called Myanmar was known as Burma then.
- **11.** Orwell began writing essays, stories, and novels <u>after he left Burma</u>.
- **12.** The poor <u>who lived in Europe</u> were the subject of *Down and Out in Paris and London*.
- **13.** Another Orwell novel, which I read last year, is 1984.
- **14.** When he wrote the essay "Shooting an Elephant," Orwell included autobiographical material.
- **15.** Before he died in 1950, Orwell had become famous and prosperous from his writing.

Phrases and Clauses Used as Modifiers, p. 165 EXERCISE

1. During the summer of 1212, thousands of European children launched a religious crusade.

- **2.** The children who formed the group were led by a French shepherd boy, Stephen.
- **3.** In a vision, Stephen had received a letter from Jesus to deliver to the French king.
- 4. Journeying with the letter to the king,
 Stephen was joined by thousands of other
 children.
- **5.** Some of the group decided to conquer the Holy Land, which was held by Muslims.
- **6.** According to their plan, they would take the Holy Land with love, not violence.
- **7.** Around thirty thousand children reached the French seaport Marseille <u>before disaster</u> <u>struck.</u>
- **8.** Merchants who had offered them free transport to the Holy Land sold them as slaves in North Africa.
- **9.** <u>Inspired by Stephen's crusade</u>, a ten-yearold boy named Nicholas continued Stephen's work.
- In 1218, Nicholas, a German, began preaching about the Children's Crusade of 1212.
- 11. The children whom he attracted as followers numbered around twenty thousand.
- **12.** Their path to the Holy Land led through Italy, where they split into groups.
- **13.** Many children died of starvation and disease.
- **14.** Because they needed to cross the Mediterranean Sea, some children went to Genoa.
- 15. No ship's captain was agreeable enough to allow them passage.
- **16.** <u>Traveling to Rome</u>, some of the children encountered the pope, Innocent III.

Original content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

- **17.** Innocent III, who felt compassion toward the children, released them from their crusade vows.
- **18.** Betrayed by slave traders, many of the children were sold as slaves.
- **19.** One mystery that remains is the fate of Nicholas, the leader.
- **20.** After the crusade was over, no trace of him remained.

Bad and Badly/Good and Well, p. 166

EXERCISE A

- 1. good
- 5. well
- 9. badly

- **2.** bad
- **6.** badly
- **10.** well

- **3.** well
- **7.** well
- **4.** bad
- 8. well

EXERCISE B

- **11.** With so much salt, the meatloaf tasted badly.
- **12.** You did quite good on that pop quiz.
- 13. *C*
- **14.** LaTanya speaks French good enough to get her ideas across.
- **15.** The student in driver's education drove bady bad.

Slow and Slowly/Real and Really, p. 167

EXERCISE A

- **1.** slow
- **5.** really
- **9.** really

- 2. really
- **6.** slowly
- **10.** slowly

- **3.** slowly
- **7.** real
- **4.** real
- 8. slowly

EXERCISE B

11. real

- **14.** slowly
- **12.** really
- **15.** real

13. slow

Eight Troublesome Modifiers, p. 168

EXERCISE A

- 1. good
- **5.** bad
- 9. well

- 2. really
- **6.** bad
- **10.** slowly

- **3.** bad
- **7.** well
- **4.** well
- 8. slowly

EXERCISE B

- 11. slowly
- **14.** C

12. really

15. good

13. well

Regular Comparison, p. 169

EXERCISE A

- 1. most exciting
- 6. most beautiful

2. faster

- 7. most effective
- **3.** more graceful
- **8.** funnier
- **4.** most expensive
- **9.** less crowded
- 5. heaviest
- 10. milder

EXERCISE B

- 11. easiest
- **14.** faster
- **12.** more fun
- **15.** less common
- 13. more frequently

Irregular Comparison, p. 170

EXERCISE A

1. better

- 6. best
- **2.** farthest [or furthest]
- 7. worse

3. more

8. best

4. better

9. worst

5. less

10. more

EXERCISE B

11. The firefighter said this is the <u>baddest</u> fire she has ever seen.

better

- **12.** Rhonda, although short, is gooder at basketball than many of us.
- **13.** Of the three desserts offered, I like fruit most salad mostest.
- **14.** The patient declared, "This is the wellest I've felt in days!"
- 15. *C*

Regular and Irregular Comparison A, p. 171

EXERCISE

worse

- **1.** This storm was even <u>badder</u> than the last one.
- 2. (

more humorous

3. My speech was <u>humorouser</u> than any other speech in the class.

more intelligent

4. Sharla was the <u>intelligenter</u> of the two job applicants.

more courageous

- **5.** Do you think Pocahontas was <u>courageouser</u> than Sacagawea?
- **6.** Juan, Ricardo's twin brother, was more old by three-and-a-half minutes.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** People who live along this road complain worst that it is the most bad in the entire township.
- **9.** Floyd and his son are both landscape designers, but Floyd is the more well known of the two.
- 10. *C*
- **11.** Both the strawberry and the vanilla yogurt tasted good, but the strawberry was more sweeter sweet.
- **12.** Looking across the water at the sunset, you most magnificent can see the magnificentest view you can imagine.
- **13.** Angelina is the <u>most young</u> of the three friends.
- **14.** A new house is going to be expensive today than it would have been a few years ago.
- **more distinctly 15.** Why didn't you answer distinctlier?
- **16.** I thought the questions on that test were harder more hard than usual.
- **17.** Of all the go-carts in the race, Bart's went farthest the most far.

- **18.** Of the three poems I showed to the editor, best he thought this one was written the wellest.
- **19.** Beth and Ronny finished their science faster experiment more fast than the other teams.
- **20.** Vicky became ill yesterday, and today she is worse iller than before.

Regular and Irregular Comparison B, p. 172

EXERCISE A

1. worst

- **6.** worse
- **2.** less believable
- **7.** less

3. most

- 8. worst
- 4. more tired
- 9. better
- **5.** least friendly
- 10. least surprising

EXERCISE B

[11] In the 1980s some musical groups were better more well known than others. [12] One of the most unusual unusualest popular groups was a band called Menudo. [13] The singing group itself was better more well known than any of its members because the individual members kept changing. [14] When a singer reached the age of sixteen, younger he was replaced by a more young one. more consistent [15] Thus, the sound remained consistenter than the performers.

Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms A, p. 173

EXERCISE A

- 1. most assuredly
- **6.** most practical
- 2. most violent
- 7. most irritating
- **3.** simpler
- **8.** more entertaining
- **4.** scariest
- **9.** warmest
- **5.** most interesting
- **10.** bigger

- **11.** Elsie is funnier than any woman I know.
- **12.** I browsed through a number of shirts and selected the one I liked more.
- 13. *C*

more fun

14. Riding dirt bikes is most fun than riding a ten-speed bicycle.

least fresh

15. This container of yogurt is the <u>less fresh</u> one on the shelf.

Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms B, p. 174

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** Alyssa's handwriting is less legible than José's.
- **2.** Tana's argument for the change was better supported than Kim's was.
- **3.** These items from the drugstore are cheaper than the ones at the salon.
- **4.** While in India, Wynona photographed the Taj Mahal more often than Elzie did.
- **5.** The football program at my new school appears to be better than the one at my last school.
- **6.** I laughed at the humorous mistake as much as Glenda did.
- **7.** Marty sent a larger bouquet of flowers to Candace than Raquel did.
- **8.** The volume on the radio is higher than the volume on the TV.
- **9.** On Saturday, Dayna spent more on groceries than Judy did.
- **10.** Jerome complimented his date as often as Terry complimented his date.

Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms: Review, p. 175

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** I found the television's remote control before my brother,
- **2.** Of all the football players who played in muddiest the rain, Todd is muddier.
- **3.** This is the least thickest the ice on the lake has been all winter.
- **4.** I like steamed rice, but I like fried rice best.

- **5.** If you hurry, you'll get better seats than anyone,
- **6.** The essay question on the English exam the one on the exam was harder than biology.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** The buffet table held corn, carrots, and best beans. I chose corn since I like it better.
- **9.** The mother-daughter camping trip occurs before any activity of the year.
- **10.** The skirts on this rack are smaller than that rack.
- 11. Frankie tossed the ball higher than Johnny
- **12.** Of the two dishes, the shrimp tempura is healthy less healthier than the steamed shrimp.
- **13.** Everyone agrees that Brent writes more else exciting stories than anyone in the class.
- **14.** I buy more clothes over the Internet than stores.
- 15. *C*
- **16.** When I was in the fifth grade, I thought Dixie Porter was the most prettiest girl in the world.
- **17.** Luis likes his career more than Irma.
- **18.** Of the numerous items I placed in the consignment store, the carved chest is more valuable.
- **19.** I prefer goldfish to any pet because they don't bark, scratch, or need to go outside.
- **20.** The temperatures in Florida are milder than the temperatures in Maine.

Correcting Dangling Modifiers, p. 176

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** After turning on the radio, I woke up the baby.
- **2.** C

- **3.** C
- **4.** Looking in the closet, she found her camera.
- **5.** Grapefruit juice doesn't taste very good when drunk after eating yogurt.
- **6.** Aimed at the target, the arrow hit the tree.
- **7.** When trying to understand new words, you will find a dictionary is useful.
- **8.** Playing too close to the house, we broke a window.
- **9.** C
- **10.** While washing the dishes, he broke a china cup.

Correcting Misplaced Modifiers, p. 177

EXERCISE

Double arrows indicate modifiers that can appear in more than one place in the sentence.

- **1.** I bought a ladder to fix the roof <u>that was</u> sturdy.
- Martin watched a radiant sunset <u>climbing a</u> hill.
- **3.** Wanda offered me the book <u>swinging in the</u> hammock.
- 4. <
- **5.** Earl discovered many beetles <u>examining the</u> rosebushes.
- 6. *C*
- **7.** Lorraine swatted the flies near the sandwiches that were buzzing around.
- **8.** Carlos found another fuse in the drawer that was no good.
- **9.** Isabel bought a blue dress from the clothing store in the mall <u>with black stripes</u>.
- **10.** <u>Under my bed</u> I found my revised history paper.

Dangling and Misplaced Modifiers A, p. 178

EXERCISE A

- 1. From our seats we could see the stage clearly in the balcony.
- **2.** The guest speaker had dedicated his book to his dog who was an archaeologist.
- **3.** I bought the red coat from the new shop with the enormous hood.
- 4. Shining brightly in the distance, the weary travelers were happy to see a restaurant sign.
- **5.** The magazine is in the pile on the third shelf that you requested.

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary.

- **6.** After raking the leaves, we carried them to the compost pile.
- **7.** Walking in the sunshine felt warm.
- **8.** Peering through the trees, we saw that the path ahead was evident.
- **9.** Relieved, I learned all of the tests had passing grades.
- **10.** To save money, we clipped many coupons.

Dangling and Misplaced Modifiers B, p. 179

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- **1.** Carrying ribbons and trophies, the winners marched off the platform.
- **2.** The smoke alarm went off while I was cooking my dinner.
- **3.** A young woman wearing a suit and a hat knocked on the door.
- **4.** Several students who had questions remained after class and spoke to the teacher.
- **5.** Rosetta is performing shows that are very entertaining for children in hospitals.
- **6.** I needed more varnish to finish my project in shop class.
- **7.** Mother found a package tied with ribbons outside our house.

- **8.** Feeling quite hungry, the librarian thought only of her upcoming lunch break.
- **9.** My friends will love these bagels covered in cream cheese.
- **10.** Walking from door to door, they hung fliers on each doorknob.

Review A: Forms of Modifiers, p. 180

EXERCISE

- 1. Even when the team plays good, the coach is seldom pleased.
- 2. (
- **3.** The coach believes that a loss or tie reflects poorly peer on his ability.
- **4.** Schools and colleges want teams that are successfully coached successful.
- 5. *C*
- **6.** If the team plays good, the coach will be happy.
- **7.** Sometimes the losing players feel real disappointed.
- 8. (
- **9.** Teams could win-easy if all the players did as the coach instructed.
- **10.** Teams who don't practice as often as they should improve more slow.
- **11.** Is it easy to think clear in a locker room?
- **12.** If a coach speaks too sharp, players may stop listening.
- **13.** If a lecture is real negative, some players might not respond well.
- **14.** *C*
- **15.** To generalize about sports is to speak *inaccurately* inaccurate.
- 16. *C*
- **17.** A whining child behaved bad during the entire game.

- **18.** Despite the grounds crew's efforts to paint the yard lines even, the paint job looked bad.
- **19.** If you work more carefully and draw each slowly line slow, you will see better results.
- **20.** Because he was hot and tired after playing for so long, Carlos wasn't real excited about the game.

Review B: Comparison of Modifiers, p. 181 EXERCISE A

- **1.** Mallory is the worse clarinet player I've ever heard.
- **2.** Nico sings more better than anyone else in his class.
- **3.** English is the more difficult subject for me.
- **4.** Of the two sports, tennis is probably most popular.
- **5.** Whoever in the class answers most quickest will win the game.
- **6.** That star shines more brightly than any star in its galaxy.
- **7.** Of all the songs I've heard you play, that last one was better.
- **8.** Your brother is the more handsome senior I know.
- **9.** Miguel is the most sincerest young man I've ever met.
- **10.** Your car idles least smoothly than mine.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary.

- **11.** When you compare football and baseball, football is the roughest game of the two.
- **12.** For the most part, the players on the footthose on ball team are bigger than the baseball team.
- **13.** A tackle may be bigger than anyone in his class.

- **14.** No player is more friendlier than our team captain.
- **15.** Our team manager talks with the players more than the coach. [or Our team manager talks with the players more than the coach.]
- **16.** What was the worse moment of the team manager's life?
- **17.** Of the two possibilities, this one is the most logical.
- **18.** When our equipment disappeared, the manager was more stunned than anyone.
- **19.** *C*
- **20.** Our coach is better than any coach in the city.

Review C: Dangling and Misplaced Modifiers, p. 182

EXERCISE A

Answers will vary.

- 1. $\boldsymbol{\zeta}$
- **2.** Covered with sweat from the hot sun, I thought the ocean looked inviting.
- **3.** To iron my delicate silk shirt, I must set the iron to the correct temperature.
- **4.** Before learning of the party, I thought my weekend seemed boring.
- **5.** Typing the command into the computer, I saved the file on the hard drive.

EXERCISE B

Double arrows indicate modifiers that can appear in more than one place in the sentence.

- 6. Our coach thanked me for the safety that produced the winning points after the game
- 7. Between the bench and the press box we learned there was a telephone.
- **8.** The team was taken on a tour of the campus visiting our school

- 9. (
- **10.** At the end of the skit, a boy was reunited with his family who had wandered off by himself
- **11.** Watching the skit closely the actors received loud applause from the athletes.
- **12.** A cheerleader is rarely seen talking to the football captain in a long dress
- 13. *C*
- 14. The sports reporters could hear our pep band playing in the press box
- **15.** The dog had interrupted a play that was chased off the field

Review D: Correct Use of Modifiers, p. 183

EXERCISE

Answers may vary.

- Seeing that no damage had been done, the two people drove their cars away in opposite directions.
- **2.** The cold juice tasted really good to the thirsty runner.
- **3.** Which pet have you had longer, your rabbit or your cat?
- **4.** Walking carefully over the broken cobblestones, the woman made her way down the lane.
- **5.** C
- **6.** Working long hours, he achieved success after many years.
- **7.** Although her choice of colors wasn't the best, she arranged the flowers well.
- **8.** By looking through a telescope, I could see the far shore dimly.
- **9.** Of the three movies we watched last weekend, the third one was the scariest.
- **10.** A well-trained police officer remains calm in emergencies.

Original content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 9: A Glossary of Usage, pp. 184–193

Glossary of Usage A, p. 184

EXERCISE

1.	effects	11.	all right
2.	bring	12.	a lot

- **3.** Besides **13.** allusions
- 4. accept

 Mogadishu, but she did not.
- 5. take
 15. hammer
 14. Photographer Peter Beard invented Iman at the University of Nairobi.

15. *C*

EXERCISE B

Somalia.

16. With her fine bone structure, Iman may definitely perform her modeling assignments well!

11. The famous model Iman immigrated from

12. Her family was wealthy, but she saw many

Somalians who had fewer money.

13. She could of stayed in her hometown of

emigrated

- **17.** Many immigrants in Iman's position might have might of put their homeland behind them.
- **18.** Iman, however, don't let the memory of Somalia fade away.

 discovered
- **19.** She invented the importance of homeland and keeps Somalia in her mind.

20. *C*

Glossary of Usage B, p. 185

EXERCISE A

7. that

8. lend

10. among

9. as fast as

1. Garrett A. Morgan, despite facing severe racial prejudice, discovered the first traffic light.

17. Because

18. break

19. etc.

20. an

- **2.** Please buy less bottles of soft drinks and more fruit juice at the store.
- **could have 3.** I could of defended my actions, but I did not.
- 4. (
- **5.** My grandparents sometimes doesn't understand me.
- **6.** The Statue of Liberty reminds us of the many people who emigrated to the United States.
- 7. If I make a weekly schedule, I waste fewer time than if I don't make a schedule.
- **8.** During World War II, many Jews were emigrate forced to immigrate from their countries.
- 9. (
- **10.** I <u>invented</u> a new, quicker route home from school.

Glossary of Usage C, p. 186

EXERCISE A

- **1.** infer **6.** I hope
- had
 edges
 ought
 flag
- 4. Ohioans5. themselves10. ought not

EXERCISE B

- 11. The horticulture club are proud of theirself for creating the exhibit of state flowers.
- **12.** Hopefully these pasqueflowers from South Dakota will grow in my state.
- **13.** I can <u>imply</u> their appearance from the description in this article.
- 14. You hadn't ought to pick bluebonnets from the side of Texas highways.

- Mr. Garza
 Mr. Garza he told me that Maine's state flower is the pine cone.
- **16.** I wish I had of gotten some native violets in Illinois.
- 17. *C*
- **18.** My Georgian cousin she used Cherokee roses in the decorations for her graduation party.
- **19.** My escort to the pageant in Florida chose the bouquet of orange blossoms hisself.
- **20.** We <u>had ought</u> to photograph the yucca while we are in New Mexico.

Glossary of Usage D, p. 187

EXERCISE

- 1. kind of
- **11.** off
- 2. outside
- **12.** as though

3. let

13. sorts

4. learn

- **14.** Let
- **5.** rather
- **15.** as if
- 6. these types7. A number of
- 16. teach17. outside
- 8. from

- **18.** kind of
- **9.** as though
- **19.** The number of
- **10.** teach
- **20.** as if

Glossary of Usage E, p. 188

EXERCISE A

- 1. unless
- 6. supposed to

2. than

7. that

3. those

8. that

4. that

9. try to

5. that

10. way

EXERCISE B

- **11.** This rhyming dictionary will help your poetry writing some.
- **12.** *C*

means that

13. Blank verse is when the lines in a poem do not rhyme.

- **14.** This here blank verse poem has five iambic feet per line.
- **15.** Free verse is poetry where there is no regular rhyme scheme, meter, or stanza formation.

The Double Negative, p. 189

EXERCISE A

1. DN

6. S

2. DN

7. DN

3. DN

8. DN

4. DN

9. S

5. DN

10. DN

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary slightly.

- 11. Sharks don't have no bones in their bodies.
- **12.** I could hear something crawling through the grass, but I couldn't see nothing.
- **13.** Isabel hadn't scarcely enough gasoline in the car to get home.
- **14.** I thought I had a red pencil, but I couldn't find none.
- **15.** I couldn't hardly tell the difference between the twins until I had known them awhile.

Nonsexist Language, p. 190

EXERCISE A

Nonsexist terms may vary. Sample responses are given.

- 1. In my neighborhood, the <u>mailmen</u> are collecting donations of canned food.
- **2.** A <u>delivery man</u> will take all the donations to a local soup kitchen.
- **3.** Some of the businessmen in nearby shops and offices set out boxes for donations.
- **4.** They help their fellow man by taking these donations to a shelter for the homeless.
- **5.** Some people think that mankind has become cold and uncaring.

Driginal content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

- **6.** The workers and housewives who donate food and clothing know that some people do care.
- **7.** I know a <u>seamstress</u> who gives free sewing lessons at a women's shelter.
- **8.** Our local <u>weatherman</u> collects coats each winter for the Salvation Army.
- **9.** My cousin, who is a <u>male</u> nurse, donates his Saturdays to an inner-city health clinic.
- **10.** With enough manpower, we will make a significant difference in our community.

EXERCISE B

Nonsexist terms may vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** Each of our congressmen volunteered his or her time to shelters in his or her hometown.
- **12.** Enrico, who is a fireman, donated and installed fire extinguishers in tenement houses.
- **13.** Any police officer who volunteered his or her time was asked to give personal-safety clinics.
- 14. Some stewards and stewardsses hosted a meeting on jobs in the airline industry.
- **15.** A seamstress donated children's sleepwear synthetic made of a man-made, flame-proof material.

Review A: Common Usage Problems, p. 191

EXERCISE **A**

1. way

- **6.** police officer
- 2. invented
- **7.** any

3. take

8. accept

4. effect

9. inferred

5. fewer

10. emigration

EXERCISE B

11. A <u>hiking party they</u> spotted a brush fire and reported it to the ranger station.

- **12.** Mrs. Ho wouldn't <u>leave</u> us go to the auditorium for rehearsal until we had cleaned up the classroom.
 - Because [or Since]
- **13.** Being as I needed money, I took a part-time job.

firefighters

- **14.** Both <u>firemen</u> were affected by the heat from the raging flames.
- **15.** *C*
- **16.** I wish I <u>could of</u> gone on the trip.
- **17.** The commissioners will <u>try and</u> have their reports ready before the city council meets next week.

who [or that]

- **18.** Both of the people which were under suspicion had good alibis.
- **19.** The missing suitcase could not be found anywhere nowhere.
- **20.** We were surprised to see her driving one of those them foreign cars.

Review B: Common Usage Problems, p. 192

EXERCISE **A**

1. teach

- **6.** implied
- 2. person
- **7.** fewer
- person

- 8. effect
- 3. Among4. beside
- **9.** either
- _ .
- J. CILLICI
- **5.** anything
- 10. except

EXERCISE **B**

- **11.** Your essay is longer then any that I have written.
- **12.** What sort of a party are you planning?

 Because [or Since]
- **13.** Being that you are taller than I, would you please hang the picture for me?
- **14.** When a pipe busted last week, our house was flooded.
 - could have
- **15.** I <u>could of</u> done better if I had prepared more thoroughly.

rather [or somewhat]

16. I didn't join you because I was <u>kind of</u> tired.

- **17.** *C*
- 18. *C*
- **19.** Where did you leave the book at?
- **20.** This book is more interesting then the last one I read.

Review C: Common Usage Problems, p. 193

EXERCISE

Multiple choice answers will not vary; but revisions in standard, formal usage may. Sample revisions are given.

- **1.** c I should [or I ought to]
- 2. a seemed as if we should

- **3.** c this house
- **4.** b try to find it
- **5.** a the crew's supervisor
- **6.** b this sort of book
- **7.** b acted as if they were tired
- **8.** c Let him finish it.
- **9.** a I should have stayed.
- **10.** b An appeal to the common person

Original content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 10: Capitalization, pp. 194–211

First Words, I and O, Salutations and Closings, p. 194

EXERCISE A

- 1. the main character said to the tiny ant, "what can i do for you, o mighty master?"
- **2.** we watched that movie, and oh, did we laugh!
- **3.** <u>in</u> the attic <u>i</u> found a box of old family photographs.
- **4.** <u>our</u> class discussed the meaning of the line "<u>the</u> midnight sun casts shadows o'er my dreams."
- **5.** <u>her</u> letters to me usually begin with "<u>my</u> dear Kayla," and end with "<u>love</u> always, Grandma."

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Plutarch once said, "the mind is not a vessel to be filled but a fire to be lighted."
- 7. "a fire to be lighted" suggests the mind's potential.
- **8.** "my dearest Sandra," the handwritten letter began.
- **9.** Grandmother closed the letter with a simple "love, Grandma."
- **10.** <u>i</u> always sign my letters to friends by writing "yours truly, Lisa" in cursive letters.
- **11.** Finn asked, "have you seen the new documentary about Cuba?"
- **12.** Heather answered, "no, not yet, but it's on my list."
- **13.** <u>the</u> first line <u>i</u> read in the poem was "<u>hear</u> us, o Zeus."
- **14.** what i heard was—oh, it's not important.

15. Walt Whitman's tribute begins, "o Captain! My Captain!"

Proper Nouns and Adjectives A, p. 195

EXERCISE A

- 1. reading a dickens classic
- **2.** mary mcleod bethune
- **3.** my favorite shakespearean sonnet
- 4. m.f.k. fisher
- **5.** *C*
- **6.** the works of james joyce
- **7.** fluffy's grooming habits
- 8. texas patriot don erasmo seguin
- **9.** the respected rebecca thatcher, ph.d.
- 10. learning about dr. martin luther king, jr.

Exercise B

- 11. The Well-known H. G. Wells Novel
- 12. Lassie The Courageous Collie
- 13. My Family Doctor, Emily Shapiro, M.D.
- 14. The Battles Of William The Conqueror
- 15. Auction Of A Renoir Masterpiece

Proper Nouns and Adjectives B, p. 196 EXERCISE A

- **1.** helicopter ride over the island of <u>maui</u>
- 2. hiking through saskatchewan province
- **3.** *C*
- **4.** a desert in the middle east
- 5. a cruise on the mediterranean sea
- **6.** the capital city of <u>haiti</u>
- **7.** touring the <u>east coast</u> [or **△**]
- **8.** a country in the southern hemisphere
- **9.** driving on interstate 10
- 10. door county, wisconsin

- 11. The West
- **12.** The City of Detroit
- 13. Lafayette Parish Bus Route
- **14.** Nova Scotia Coastline
- **15.** The Sunbelt
- **16.** South of Houston
- 17. A Region of South Dakota
- **18.** Expedition on Mount Everest
- 19. Ferry to Dauphin Island
- **20.** Bay Of Naples

Proper Nouns and Adjectives C, p. 197

EXERCISE A

- 1. driving a new toyota tacoma pickup
- 2. st. jude children's research hospital patient
- **3.** cheering chicago bulls fans
- 4. duke university admissions office
- 5. north carolina state senate committee
- **6.** <u>american medical association</u> recommendations
- **7.** kelley's hardware store specials
- 8. (
- **9.** habitat for humanity volunteer
- **10.** a tour of the smithsonian institution

EXERCISE B

- 11. Newcomb College Freshman
- **12.** St. Louis Cardinals Cap
- **13.** Executives of Dell Computer Corporation
- **14.** Frost National Bank Checking Account
- **15.** National Honor Society Member
- 16. *C*
- 17. Southwestern Bell Operator
- 18. *C*

- 19. *C*
- **20.** The League of Women Voters

Proper Nouns and Adjectives D, p. 198

EXERCISE A

- 1. a rialto theater production
- **2.** a tour of the taj mahal
- **3.** the pulitzer prize-winning novel
- **4.** the leaning tower of pisa
- **5.** field trip to mount rushmore national memorial
- **6.** photographing the brooklyn bridge
- 7. craters of the moon national monument
- **8.** honored by the <u>national society</u> of <u>film</u> critics award
- 9. (
- 10. the top of the empire state building

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Crossing the Natchez Trace Parkway Bridge
- 12. Newspaper Article about Windsor Castle
- **13.** The Ceiling of the Sistine Chapel
- 14. Crossing a Suspension Bridge
- **15.** *C*

Proper Nouns and Adjectives E, p. 199

EXERCISE A

- 1. learning about the middle ages
- 2. super bowl
- 3. easter celebration
- 4. <
- **5.** living through the great depression
- **6.** new york city marathon competitor
- 7. sunday brunch
- 8. (
- **9.** the period of the reformation
- 10. special olympics volunteer

- 11. Annual Labor Day Sale
- 12. April Fool's Day Surprise
- 13. Choosing a Father's Day Present
- 14. *C*
- **15.** *C*

Proper Nouns and Adjectives F, p. 200

EXERCISE

- 1. studying the <u>talmud</u> each week
- 2. confucian social principles
- 3. american indian tradition
- **4.** a lovely <u>passover</u> feast
- **5.** a <u>presbyterian</u> minister
- **6.** memorizing verses from genesis
- 7. a maple leaf on the canadian flag
- **8.** making a <u>muslim</u> pilgrimage
- **9.** <u>sufi</u> poetry honoring <u>allah</u>
- **10.** <u>navajo</u> lineage in my family
- 11. an italian restaurant
- **12.** a copy of the <u>bhagavad-gita</u>
- **13.** a meeting with the lutherans
- 14. the japanese ambassador
- **15.** a british newspaper
- 16. *C*
- **17.** the european team
- **18.** reading from the torah
- 19. a grecian urn
- **20.** an image of vishnu

Proper Nouns and Adjectives G, p. 201 EXERCISE A

- 1. C
- 2. a Telescopic Wew of the Andromeda Galaxy
- **3.** Crossing Territory on the *Orient Express*

- **4.** a Tour of the Famous Queen Mary
- **5.** the Rings of Saturn
- 6. Studying the Constellation of Ursa Major
- **7.** Photographs of the *Spirit of St. Louis*
- **8.** the Tragedy of the R.M.S. *Titanic*'s Sinking
- **9.** a Planned Spaceflight to Mars
- 10. the Moon as the Earth's Only Natural Satellite

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Jason is researching the Civil War battle between the *monitor* and the *morrimack*, two iron-plated Ships.
- **12.** Which ship did Columbus actually sail on, the *niña*, the *pinta*, or the *santa maría*?
- **13.** Sometimes, Pluto is actually closer to the sun than neptune.
- **14.** The band is practicing a song about a famous train called *the City of New Orleans*.
- **15.** Is betelgeuse really six hundred times as large as the Sun?

Proper Nouns and Adjectives H, p. 202

EXERCISE A

- 1. Hae Sin could see the rings around saturn with the telescope she had built for physics class.
- 2. The spacecraft magellan was sent to gather venus information about venus.
- 3. On august 28, 1963, more than 200,000 peo-Washington Monument
 ple gathered near the washington monu-Lincoln Memorial
 ment and the linclon memorial to hear Dr.

 Tr.

 Martin Luther King, jr., speak.
- **4.** I learned in my history II class that Dr. Nobel Peace Prize
 King won the nobel peace prize in 1964.
- **5.** The only language course that Theodore Cerman could fit into his schedule was german.

- 6. *C*
- 7. westminster abbey
- 8. the d-day invasion
- 9. gold medal flour
- 10. *C*
- 11. *C*
- 12. spanish history
- 13. the federal reserve bank
- 14. on yom kippur
- **15.** the boat ariadne

Proper Nouns and Adjectives: Review, p. 203

EXERCISE A

- 1. First National Bank
- 2. Navajo settlement
- 3. Alice Walker
- **4.** a Vietnamese grocery store
- 5. Gulf of Mexico
- 6. the President's Council on Aging
- 7. Academy Award
- **8.** moons of Jupiter
- **9.** Gallaudet University
- 10. Charlotte Hornets

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Students from my English class at Evans School Warren Township High school in warren township entered the contest.
- **12.** The guest speaker for chemistry class today *H. Lorenzo Webber, M.D.* will be h. lorenzo webber, m.d.
- 13. Linda planned to leave eleveland, on the Lake Erie southern shore of lake erie, travel south-Mississippi River west, and cross the mississippi river at St. Louis, Missouri st. louis, missouri.
- 14. Our neighbor mr. Renfro sometimes takes Bubba, care of our dog, bubba, when we travel out of town.

- 15. Mr. Itoh has planned excursions to Yellowstone National Park Black yellowstone national park and the black Hills hills region.
- **16.** They held the fourth of july picnic at Potter Park.
- **17.** Kaloma plans to attend the university of Virginia fall virginia in the Fall.
- **18.** Several mummies from ancient Egypt are On display at the british museum.
- American Automobile Association

 19. The american automobile association printMemorial Day
 ed a booklet on memorial day celebrations.

 Saturday

 Bijou Theater
- **20.** Every saturday morning, the bijou theater shows old westerns.

Titles A, p. 204

EXERCISE

- **1.** I gave her and professor Cho a copy of my research paper.
- **2.** Mr. Hemphill recently met Carrie Benjamin, our local [or(local]] business deader of the Vear.
- **3.** Can you discuss your long-range military strategy, captain?
- 4. <
- **5.** We are honored to accommodate you, Senator Hall.
- **6.** My sister and I gave grandmother Todd a lovely brooch for her birthday.
- 7. It has taken principal Harvey and ms. Lee ten minutes to silence the students in the main auditorium.
- 8.
- **9.** Our classmates think aunt Betty makes the best chocolate chip cookies.
- 10. *C*

Titles B, p. 205

EXERCISE A

- **1.** I keep a small print of Botticelli's **(h p**rimavera taped to my bedroom mirror.
- 2. (
- **3.** Edgar, who would like to be an engineer, has a subscription to popular science magazine.
- **4.** Mr. Scott said there will be questions about the Treaty Of Versailles on the test.
- **5.** My brother and I never miss an episode of the fascinating *pva*.
- **6.** Last summer Roseleen saw a production of *the importance of being enruest*.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** The first chapter of the grapes of wrath is very nicely constructed.
- **9.** Peter reads both the columbia fournalism review and the san fipse mercury news.
- **10.** "As time goes by" is the title of my grand-parents' special song.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

- 11. Star Wars
- 12. "Ode on a Grecian Urn"
- 13. "The Monster Mash"
- **14.** *National Geographic*
- 15. Our Town

Titles: Review, p. 206

EXERCISE A

- **1.** No one expected archbishop Desmond Tutu to attend the ceremony.
- **2.** Dixie asked her Kunt Margaret if she had ever seen the movie the miracle worker.
- **3.** Willis delivers papers for the detroit free press.
- **4.** Countee Cullen wrote the poem "from the dark tower."

5. Suzanne, Terri, and dad all attended the school play, *Fiddler On The Roof*.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** The Dallas Morning News
- 7. former-Governor Ann Richards
- **8.** C
- 9. the Bill of Rights
- **10.** the first chapter in the guidebook
- **11.** the painting *The Night Watch*
- **12.** the last chapter of *The Catcher in the Rye*
- **13.** the poem "The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock"
- **14.** the book *Year of Liberty: The Great Irish Rebellion of 1798*
- 15. Field Marshal Bernard Montgomery

Abbreviations, p. 207

EXERCISE

- A ferry operates on Lake Michigan between Muskegon, Michigan, and Green Bay, Wisconsin.
- **2.** Doctor, do you have time to see Ms. Wahl this afternoon?
- **3.** The bus to Los Angeles leaves every morning at 10:15.
- **4.** The man in the passing jeep was General Eisenhower.
- We live on Grand Street in Jackson, Mississippi.
- **6.** The speed limit in this area is 25 miles per hour.
- **7.** The patient is now in the care of Dr. Thomas Seguin. [*or* The patient is now in the care of Thomas Seguin, M.D.]
- **8.** Dan's favorite program is shown on PBS.
- **9.** My favorite president was Abraham Lincoln.
- **10.** Do you enjoy the music of Harry Connick, Jr.?

Titles and Abbreviations: Review, p. 208

Exercise

- **1.** The Greek playwright Euripides wrote *Iphigenia at Aulis.*
- **2.** Have you ever been to Reed City, Michigan?

- **3.** The star of *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom* is Harrison Ford.
- **4.** Soon we will be able to address my sister as Dr. Emily Jackson. [*or* Emily Jackson, Ph.D.]
- **5.** Governor Harrington attended a conference at NASA headquarters.
- **6.** My uncle's favorite poem is "Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening."
- 7. Has Mayor Levine agreed to speak at Washington High School's graduation?
- **8.** Carefully add three ounces of saline solution to the mixture.
- **9.** José went to visit Aunt Maria in Waukesha, Wisconsin.
- **10.** How many artists have recorded "Yesterday" by John Lennon and Paul McCartney?

Review A: Using Capital Letters, p. 209

EXERCISE A

- **1.** a
- **5.** a
- **8.** a

- **2.** b
- **6.** b
- **9.** b

- **3.** a
- **7.** a
- **10.** a

4. a

EXERCISE B

- **11.** A statue of general Washington stands in the town's main square.
- **12.** please give me your advice, omy wisest of friends.
- **13.** She said, "isn't that hotel located on the east side of Times Square?"
- **14.** On tuesday Irene went hiking on Sentry mountain with her younger sister.
- **15.** In his speech on St. Patrick's Day, Mayor Brown mentioned Irish-American friendship.
- **16.** Is Raleigh the Capital of north Carolina?
- **17.** Why, **g**erald, **i**)didn't know your **G**reat-**G**randfather fought in the Spanish-American War.

- 18. *C*
- **19.** Sometimes help out at my parents' store, which is on Jefferson Avenue.
- **20.** 'the nation's park system includes Glacier National Park," ms. garza continued.

Review B: Using Capital Letters, p. 210

EXERCISE A

- **1.** b
- **5.** a
- **8.** a

- **2.** a
- **6.** b
- **9.** b

- **3.** b
- **7.** a
- **10.** b

4. b

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Our local Theater is auditioning cast members for *The* sound of music.
- 12. *C*
- **13.** Her cousin has applied for a job at Compudata, inc.
- **14.** Westerday is climbed Squaw peak and got a wonderful view of Phoenix, Arizona.
- 15. *C*
- **16.** Have you ever been to Albany, the **C**apital of New York?
- **17.** Carlos asked, "are you going to try out for the soccer team, hank?"
- **18.** Please ask your **A**unt for a copy of her book, *Traveling with Pets*.
- **19.** Did you see the articles in *PC Magazine* about the new Dell Computers?
- **20.** In Washington, D.C., one Senator announced plans for a new domestic program.

Review C: Using Capital Letters, p. 211 EXERCISE A

- 1. Mount rushmore National Park has large sculptures of four U.S. Presidents.
- **2.** The Captain told the team members, "We have to win this game!"

- **3.** A new pet store called Creepy critters opened near my house last summer.
- **4.** My best friend's family is planning to move West to Utah in May.
- **5.** *C*
- **6.** A hurricane is moving Northward along the Atlantic coast.
- There is a chapter of the National Honor Society at our High School.
- **8.** Delta Airlines advertises **W**inter vacations in sunny Florida.
- **9.** Two Broadway theaters are presenting Shakespearean plays.
- **10.** President Clinton addressed a group of reporters on the lawn of the White house.

[11] in 1866, walt whitman published a book of poetry called sequel to Drum-Taps. [12] the most famous poem from that collection is the one about the assassination of abraham lincoln titled 'Ocaptain! my Captain!" [13] in this poem, the speaker is mourning the death of Lincoln. [14] The line 'Exult, Oshores, and ring, Obells" conveys the great depth of the speaker's grief. [15] The first time that i read this poem, oh, was i sad!

Chapter 11: End Marks and Commas, pp. 212–227

End Marks, p. 212

EXERCISE A

- **DEC 2.** A good breakfast is essential to a well-balanced diet.
- **IMP 3.** Look out for that runaway horse!
- **EXC 4.** What a ridiculous idea that is!
- **DEC 5.** Some berries would taste good on that cereal.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Please put the hammer back where you found it.
- 7. What an extraordinary movie that was!
- **8.** Will the plane arrive in Vienna on time?
- **9.** Many of John Wayne's best films were directed by John Ford•
- **10.** Lana didn't know why the new key wouldn't work.
- **11.** In England, the day after Christmas is known as Boxing Day•
- **12.** Be careful. [or!] That's an expensive piece of pottery. [or!]
- **13**. Have you ever wondered why the sky turns green before a tornado ?
- **14.** Oh! What a lovely bouquet of flowers. [or!]
- **15.** Remy could scarcely believe what he was seeing.

Abbreviations A, p. 213

Exercise the Rev

the Rev. Burton Erickson

1. the Reverend Burton Erickson

Rep. John Conyers

Sen• Kay Bailey Hutchison

- **2.** Representative John Conyers
- **3.** Senator Kay Bailey Hutchison

- ____ **4.** General Colin L Powell
 - **5.** Rodney Johnson, *Philosophiae Doctor*
 - **6.** Doctor Martin Luther King, Junior
- **7.** John Kim, Medical Doctor
- *Mr Stephen Pescecane* **8.** Mister Stephen
 Pescecane
 - *T***.G.** *Farrell* **9.** the novelist J G
 Farrell
- <u>Col. Conrad Kilgore</u> **10.** Colonel Conrad Kilgore

Abbreviations B, p. 214

Gen. Colin L. Powell

Rodney Johnson, Pl

Dr. Martin Luther

King, Jr.

EXERCISE A

- 1. Both of my parents are graduates of Michigan State
 University.
- **2.** All stockbrokers are governed by the rules of the <u>Securities</u> and Exchange Commission.
- US (or USN) 3. After high school, Claudia plans to enlist in the <u>United</u>
 States Navy.
- **4.** Much good around the world has been done by the <u>United</u> Nations.
- **FBL 5.** My uncle is an agent with the <u>Federal Bureau of Investigation</u>.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** My mother was born near Springfield, Illinois.
- **7.** We are moving to New York, New York, next month.

- **8.** C
- **9.** The poet T. S. Eliot was born in St. Louis, Missouri, but lived much of his life in London, England.
- **10.** Maggio, Rosalie. *The Dictionary of Bias-Free Usage: A Guide to Nondiscriminatory Language*. Phoenix, Ariz.: Oryx Press, 1991.

Abbreviations C, p. 215

EXERCISE

- 1. King John signed the Magna Carta in 4-D 1215 1215 AD.
- 2. The class starts promptly at 8:15 AM, so try to be on time.
- 3. Work began on the Parthenon in BC 447.
- **4.** The basement to the house needs to be dug *feet*12 ft deep.
- **5.** "Then, in the fourth century BC," said the narrator, "Alexander the Great was born."
- **6.** There are traces of inhabitants at the site as early as 650 AD, archaeologists say.
- **7.** How many ft are there in a mile?
- **8.** Sunday services are held at 7:00 AM, 9:00 AM, and 6:00 PM.
- **9.** The first invasions of the Anglo-Saxons may have occurred as early as the fifth century AD.
- **10.** All entries in the contest must be submitted *Friday December* by <u>Fri.</u>, <u>Dec.</u> 8, 2009, at one o'clock <u>PM</u>.

Abbreviations Review, p. 216

EXERCISE

- **1.** In 384 B_•C_•, the philosopher Aristotle was born.
- **2.** The keynote speaker for the conference will give her address at 9:00 A_•M_• on October 28, 2001.
- **3.** Doesn't the water table start at a depth of 12 feet, 9 inches?
- **4.** My grandmother lived for a long time at 1428 Rae Dell Avenue, Austin, Texas.

- Please forward all mail to Michico Conroy, 1200 Michigan Ave. [or Avenue], Ann Arbor, MI 48104.
- **6.** According to the dictionary, Chaucer may have been born in A_•D_• 1340.
- **7.** Mr. Walter R. Estlund comes from Minneapolis, Minnesota.
- **8.** Now, add the following to the stew: 1 teaspoon salt, 1 tablespoon basil, 6 ounces chicken broth.
- **9.** The television set's measurements are as follows: 26 inches wide, 18 inches deep, and 22 inches tall.
- **10.** Martina Gonzalez, Ph_•D_•, has recently been hired by OSHA.

Commas with Items in a Series, p. 217

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underlined.

- **1.** Kanoa's winning painting was of a scarlet rose, a yellow tulip, and a blue iris.
- **2.** The main ingredient in Katya's salad dressing is delicious, tangy blue cheese.
- **3.** Dennis, Talia, and Giuseppe volunteered to rake the park. [If student interprets *Dennis* as a noun of direct address, *then* Dennis, Talia and Giuseppe volunteered to rake the park.]
- **4.** The hurricane season brought hail, high winds, and thunderstorms to the coast.
- **5.** *C*
- **6.** She baked a loaf of bread, she made soup and she cut up some fresh berries.
- 7. Randall's jogging route took him around the lake, up a steep hill, and across an empty field.
- **8.** I believe that large, old, colorful rug was woven by my grandmother.
- **9.** The thick, black clouds gathering overhead threatened rain at any moment.

10. 🤇

11. The ship left harbor on a cool, clear evening.

12. *C*

- **13.** We had to decide among the dog, the catand the marmoset.
- **14.** He looked for his glasses on the kitchen counter, on his desk, and on the bedside table.
- **15.** Some of my favorite Cajun foods include jambalaya, red beans and rice, and gumbo.
- **16.** The damp• gray mist crept over the moors as the moon rose.
- **17.** The shortstop dashed forward, snatched up the ball, and hurled it toward first base.
- **18.** The hiking trail wound up the hill, through the thicket, and alongside the waterfall.
- **19.** The three books that make up *The Lord of* the Rings are *The Fellowship of the Ring*. The *Two Towers*, and *The Return of the King*.

20. 🤇

Commas with Independent Clauses, p. 218

EXERCISE

- **1.** Guillermo ordered two books from a catalog, but they haven't arrived yet.
- **2.** Hank gave away the tickets, for he had made other plans and couldn't go.
- 3. (
- **4.** The play was received well by the audience, but the critics disliked it.
- **5.** He refused to build a new fence, nor would he repair the old one.
- **6.** The test was very difficult, yet everyone in the class passed it.
- **7.** There was a long line in front of the theater, so we decided to go to a concert.
- **8.** Are you going to the football game, or do you want to play squash?

- 9. (
- **10.** The lake was calm, and the moon was a bright, yellow crescent.
- **11.** We've tried all sorts of cat foods, yet Sparky is never satisfied.

12. *C*

- **13.** Basia had not cleaned her room, nor had she started tidying the garage.
- **14.** Ross missed the most spectacular meteor of the night, for he had his back turned at the time.
- **15.** I don't really like scary movies, but I'll come with you anyway.
- **16.** Suzanne brought some snacks to the party and her sister Rosalynne brought some punch.
- **17.** Did you let the dog out this afternoon, or did he get out on his own?

18. *C*

- **19.** My sister had not come home yet, so I decided to start dinner by myself.
- **20.** I cannot list the encyclopedia in my bibliography, for I did not use it while writing my report.

Commas with Nonessential Clauses and Phrases, p. 219

EXERCISE A

- **1.** She returned all the books <u>that she</u> had borrowed from the library.
- **2.** All students <u>trying out for the track</u> team should be excellent runners.
- N3. Robert Frost, who taught at HarvardUniversity, was a great poet.
- **4.** The man <u>leading the parade</u> is the mayor of our town.
- No. The Nineteenth Amendment to the U.S. Constitution, which was adopted in 1920, granted women the right to vote.
 - **6.** Trucks <u>carrying explosives</u> were not allowed to pass through the tunnel.

- 7. I believe you'll like the chicken enchiladas, which are a specialty at this restaurant.
- N 8. Our kitchen, recently remodeled, is the most comfortable room of all.
- **9.** Sylvia studied the theater's show times listed on page 8 of the newspaper.
- **E 10.** Everyone who wants to have a successful garden must weed it regularly.

- **11.** John, who was named after his father, decided to name his son something else.
- **12.** Dermot, remembering his training, lifted the box with his knees and not with his back.
- **13.** \bigcirc [or students who . . . o'clock were]
- **14.** The congresswoman, first elected to the House of Representatives in 1998, served for six years.
- 15. *C*

Commas with Introductory Elements, p. 220

Exercise

- **1.** When I moved from Georgia to North Dakota. I learned what *winter* means!
- **2.** Well, I want to read more about the candidates before I make my decision.
- **3.** Walking through the museum, we saw many interesting exhibits.
- **4.** At the end of *The African Queen*, Charlie and Rose get married.
- **5.** Yes, I would be happy to give you a ride to the airport.
- **6.** While mowing the lawn, Gigi found a small patch of forget-me-nots.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** On a clear day in the early spring, flocks of migrating birds swept by.
- **9.** Why, what a surprise to travel all the way to New York and meet a neighbor!
- **10.** Whispering. Lars told her the secret ingredient in his spaghetti sauce.

- **11.** Laughing Jim put the magazine back on the table.
- **12.** Well, let me think about that for a moment.
- **13.** Of all the short stories in the anthology, my favorite is "A Rose for Emily" by William Faulkner.
- **14.** While the audience was dazzled by the flash, the magician disappeared.
- **15.** When the scarecrow said good-bye to Dorothy, Steve began to cry.
- 16. *C*
- **17.** Sweating, the runner finished the race at the hottest part of the day.
- **18.** Okay, let's start the game.
- **19.** Out of all the cats in the shelter. Jorge picked the orange tabby.
- **20.** As her father looked on proudly. Celia took the gold medal for gymnastics.

Commas with Interrupters, p. 221

EXERCISE

- **1.** Senator Schwartz, I believe, is the best candidate for that office.
- **2.** Elephants, the largest mammals in Africa, are now considered endangered.
- **3.** Dorothea, tell me about your scholarship to Stanford University.
- **4.** Ana is the only student in our school, in fact, who has ever lived in China.
- **5.** I'd like to understand, Kris, your feelings that led to your decision.
- 6. *C*
- **7.** Dr. Montero, the only pediatrician on the staff, has office hours today.
- **8.** Only synthetic materials, she says, will be used in clothes of the future.
- **9.** In *Casablanca*, for example, Humphrey Bogart delivers a startling performance.
- **10.** I'd appreciate your prompt reply Mr. Montgomery.
- **11.** If I've told you once, Nicci, I've told you a thousand times, don't slouch at the dinner table.
- **12.** Do you know the car I mean, the red convertible with the silver hubcaps?

- **13.** Accepting the award will be Emily James the producer of the documentary.
- 14. \subset
- **15.** Meanwhile, the train pulled into Waterloo Station.
- **16.** M. R. James, not Henry James, wrote the ghost story "Casting the Runes."
- 17. Dr. Livingston I presume?
- 18. *C*
- **19.** The elephant, for instance, is native to both Africa and India.
- **20.** Have you ever seen *Paths of Glory*, the antiwar film by Stanley Kubrick?

Using Commas, p. 222

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underlined.

- 1. Oh, have you seen my dog Wolfie?
- **2.** Tonya, who read the book before I did, enjoyed it enormously.
- **3.** Seth wanted to play in the band, but he couldn't make it to rehearsal on Tuesday.
- **4.** *C*
- **5.** Clarence, by practicing all weekend, was able to play the song on the guitar on Monday.
- **6.** The reflection off the water threw bright, quivering spots against the side of the boat.
- **7.** Salon, the online magazine, did a story about the novelist E. L. Doctorow.
- **8.** *C*
- **9.** Gosh, you've really grown since I saw you last.
- **10.** Have you ever seen 2001: A Space Odyssey• the film by Stanley Kubrick?
- 11. The batter knocked the dirt off her cleats, put on a helmet, and took a couple of swings.
- **12.** Which towel do you want, the red one, the blue one, or the green one?

- 13. *C*
- **14.** The bright red car nosed carefully through the narrow crowded street.
- **15.** The dark, mysterious stranger loomed in the doorway.
- **16.** Yes, I think you could say I'm bored.
- **17.** The actress who played Queen Elizabeth, Judi Dench, won an Academy Award.
- 18. *C*
- **19.** My friend Barton McManus, Jr., has a great recipe for curry.
- **20.** Tom Hanks, Sylvester Stallone, and Gene Hackman have all done voices for animated films.

Conventional Uses of Commas, p. 223

EXERCISE A

- **1.** On November 15, 2006, the mayoral race was won by Herbert E. Thomas, Jr.
- **2.** By Tuesday, February 29, 2009, you must have your car inspected.
- **3.** You can reach Kyle Forsyth, M.D., at 243 First Street, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19002.
- **4.** Sincerely yours, Charlene Watson, DVM
- **5.** My dentist, Susan Schwartz, D.D.S., graduated from dental school in June 1999.

EXERCISE B

May 31, 2009

Dear Mr. Jackson,

On June 11, 2009, I will finally graduate. I want to thank you for being such an inspiring, dedicated teacher. Your classes were always interesting, challenging, and enlightening. You always encouraged me to follow my dreams.

Thanks for writing such a terrific recommendation for me! Please plan on visiting me there next fall. My address will be 1255 Village Avenue, Springfield, Ohio 45501.

Sincerely.

Rashard Brooks

Commas: Review, p. 224

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underlined.

- 1. The tour guide handed out tickets, programs, maps, and brochures.
- **2.** Sally knew that she would succeed if she studied hard, read all the books, and attended class.
- **3.** Sparks was a wet, cold, miserable, hungry dog by the time we got home.
- **4.** They had fresh, cold orange juice at breakfast.
- **5.** Colin called the twins, and I took care of all the other arrangements.
- **6.** My sisters agreed with me, but I had a hard time convincing Uncle Stu.
- 7. Laszlo Neumann, who won the Nichols Prize last year, will perform at the Arts Center.
- **8.** Austria's capital is Vienna, which is well-known for its architecture and gracious lifestyle.
- **9.** Wow, did you see that fly ball?
- **10.** You will, I trust, pass on the message.
- **11.** My new address is 45 Basil Road, Stony Brook, New York 11732.
- **12.** On Monday, January 15, 2009, the Bigelows' new baby was born.
- **13.** After lunch the Pasternaks' new neighbors, the Botsteins, came over for coffee.
- **14.** Portman Callow, Jr., will be our new state representative.
- **15.** Sure, I'll come if you want me to.
- **16.** The main language of Finland is Finnish, which is distantly related to Hungarian.

- **17.** Lionel lives at 122 Main Street, Kyle, Texas 78664.
- **18.** Didn't Thaddeus Flatow, the famous modern composer, write an opera called *Maria Theresia*?
- **19.** Tim, please answer the phone.
- **20.** The graduation ceremony will, of course, be held in College Hall.

Review A: End Marks and Abbreviations, p. 225

EXERCISE A

- **1.** What's the name of the woman with the dachshund?
- **2.** Stop the car immediately! [or •]
- **3.** The helicopter descended as low as the treetops•
- **4.** Be careful not to let the cat out when you open the door.
- **5.** Look out! The ladder is falling! [or .]
- **6.** Come to dinner at our house tomorrow night.
- 7. Do you remember where you left the keys to the cabinet?
- **8.** Set the groceries on the counter.
- **9.** May I offer a suggestion?
- **10.** So, what do you think?

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Representative Tataglia of New York serves on the oversight committee for NASA.
- **12.** Mr. Tom S. Petersen, Jr., hails from Wheeling, West Virginia.
- **13.** Please send my mail to 1124 Mile Rd., Big Rapids, MI 49307.
- **14.** Dr. Wanda Jackson will attend the annual AMA convention this year.
- **15.** The Roman Empire was established by the emperor Augustus in 27 B_•C_•, and lasted until it was divided in the fourth century A_•D.

Review B: Commas, p. 226

EXERCISE A

Optional commas are underlined.

- 1. When the Spaniards arrived in South America, they found that most of the western part of the continent was controlled by the Incas.
- 2. At the time of the Spanish conquest, the Inca empire extended as far north as Ecuador and as far south as Chile and Argentina.
- **3.** The remains of the capital city of the Incas can be seen today at Cuzco, a city in southern Peru.
- **4.** The Incas were excellent architects, engineers, and artisans.
- **5.** Unlike the Aztecs and the Mayas, however, the Incas never developed a system of writing.
- **6.** Their historical traditions were preserved in spoken form, not in written form.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** These knotted strings, which were called *quipu*, served as an aid to the memory.
- **9.** The Incas had no currency system, but they developed an ingenious method of collecting taxes.
- **10.** All taxes were collected in the form of labor: farmwork on government lands, service in the military forces, or work on public construction projects.

EXERCISE B

Optional commas are underlined.

- **11.** The *Readers' Guide* is an index to magazine articles, stories, and poems.
- **12.** Kelly and Jerome who are taking an advanced computer course, produced an exciting graphic display.

- **13.** My uncle lives in Montgomery, the capital of Alabama.
- **14.** When you fly cross-country, you can sometimes pass the time by watching a movie.
- 15. *C*
- **16.** Hoping for good weather, my parents planned a family picnic.
- **17.** Did you know, Mr. Franklin, that Thomas has moved to Buffalo, New York?
- **18.** I do not have the report ready today, but I hope to finish it by Friday.
- **19.** People were involved in creating costumes designing sets and composing music.
- **20.** Well, I didn't know that you expected to be invited.

Review C: End Marks and Commas, p. 227

Optional commas are underlined.

- **1.** Smiling and bowing the dancer took another curtain call.
- 2. Didn't you answer the telephone, Tiffany?
- **3.** We moved to Colorado on September 30, 1999.
- **4.** I'm sorry, Rae, but I didn't hear what you said.
- **5.** Oh, you don't have to tell me if you don't want to.
- **6.** The letter was addressed to Chane E. Johnson, M.D.
- **7.** In our school, classes regularly begin at 8:15 A.M.
- **8.** Last summer I did nothing for two months but swim, sail, and fish.
- 9. My, how cold it is

- **10.** Her father has gone to Denver, Colorado on a business trip.
- **11.** The play was written by J. D. Tallchief, a junior.
- **12.** My sister was born on January 25, 1998, and I was born on May 22, 1995.
- **13.** Don't you know where the bookstore is, Elvin?
- **14.** Katrina, don't sneak up on me like that! [or •]
- **15.** Before the game was over most of the players were covered with mud.
- **16.** Margaret Mead, Ph.D., was a famous anthropologist.
- **17.** We must be late, for the lights in the theater are dim.

- **18.** On our team, players vote to choose the captain.
- **19.** After our exciting raft trip down the rapids of the Colorado, we had many stories to share.
- **20.** Smiling nervously, the children took their positions on stage.
- **21.** Herbert E. Fiorello, Jr., has an office on Sunset Boulevard.
- **22.** Are you sure that the store is located on Tetra Avenue?
- **23.** I'll meet you on the corner of Fourteenth Street at 8:30 A_•M_•
- **24.** Didn't Dr. An Wang establish Wang Laboratories, Inc., in 1951?
- **25.** We saw Harry Connick, Jr., perform at the benefit concert.

Chapter 12: Punctuation, pp. 228-236

Semicolons A, p. 228

EXERCISE

- **1.** David prefers classical music; I prefer blues.
- **2.** Miguel wants to go on vacation this summers therefore, he is working after school to save money.
- **3.** The rain started late last night; it is expected to stop sometime this afternoon.
- **4.** Gladys brought four apples to the barnshowever, her horse ate only three of them.
- **5.** Li voted against the tax increases she expressed her opinions at the town meeting.
- **6.** The sailboat race began on times unfortunately, the judges were late.
- 7. No one in the audience noticed the loud crash; it sounded like part of the movie.
- **8.** The women wanted to play softball, the men decided to sit in the shade.
- **9.** Liang is a moody person he is often, for example, quiet and withdrawn.
- **10.** The orchestra stopped playing the dancers sat down.
- **11.** Mrs. McDuff had longed for peace and quiets she only got it when the neighbors moved.
- **12.** Papa is eager to retire: his last day at work is next Friday.
- **13.** The kids wanted to watch a video the adults preferred to go outside.
- **14.** Martha was always punctuals the rest of the class usually came in late.
- **15.** Joel is not here today: therefore, we will have to postpone his birthday celebration.
- **16.** Our terrier enjoys hiding things: those things sometimes include our shoes and socks.
- **17.** Pierre did his best on the exam; his reward was the highest grade in the class.
- **18.** The train rounded the curve at high speeds the deer just barely got out of the way in time.

- **19.** General Dupont remembers the day war was declared, he says he was in his parents' kitchen.
- **20.** Sergio Montale, the famous tenor, is singing tonight; all seats have been sold out for weeks.

Semicolons B, p. 229

EXERCISE

- 1. The tour will include stops in St. Petersburg, Russia, Kiev, Ukraine, Bucharest, Romania, Athens, Greece, and Cairo, Egypt.
- 2. In a surge of productivity, Jim watered the lawn, took out the trash, and swept the driveway, and his sister, Jenny, washed the car and the dog.
- **3.** Ruth has relatives living in Jerusalem, Israel, London, England, and Rome, Italy.
- 4. The committee invited speeches from Maya Angelou, a poet Amy Tan, a novelist and Neil Simon, a playwright.
- You may sign up for the seminar on
 Wednesday, January 29 Friday, February 7
 Monday, February 10 or Friday,
 February 14.
- **6.** The only people who came to the meeting were Jim, a writer, Mike, a car mechanic, Olivia, a dancer, and José, a computer programmer.
- 7. Last Friday, at the very last minute, we handed in our papers, and according to the schedule, we should get our grades next month.
- **8.** Our class is currently studying *A Tale of Two Cities*, the Dickens novel, *The Fire Next Time*, James Baldwin's masterpiece, and *The Chosen*, Chaim Potok's story about two Brooklyn boys.

- 9. Wednesday I'll be at home working on my project, if I have the time, but on Thursday, if all goes according to plan, I'll be on my way overseas.
- 10. The band members plan to raise funds by holding a car wash on Friday, November 16, from 6:00 to 9:00 P.M. Saturday, November 17, from 10:00 A.M. to 5:30 P.M. and Sunday, November 18, from 2:00 to 6:00 P.M.

Semicolons C, p. 230

EXERCISE

- **1.** The sun is beginning to sets soon the sky will be dark.
- 2. Performances will take place several times this month with matinees on Saturday, August 12, Sunday, August 13, and Saturday, August 26.
- **3.** Tom, our raucous young neighbor, started playing the drums every night after dinner, soon the noise was so bad we had to complain to his parents.
- **4.** Going to the lake was my ideas therefore, I should make the reservations.
- **5.** We always wash our car on the weekend; judging by its appearance, they wash theirs, too.
- **6.** Give Jane a call if you want a ride to the meeting: I won't be able to make it.
- 7. Grandfather has lived in Cork, Ireland, Boston, Massachusetts, Providence, Rhode Island, and Kenosha, Wisconsin.
- **8.** Ted, my cousin, and Sally, his friend, are coming over to dinner, so Ernie, my older brother, and I are doing the cooking.

- 9. Most trees, such as the elm, the sycamore, the oak and the birch, lose their leaves in the winter, there are some, however, such as the pine, that retain their leaves in all seasons.
- **10.** On Monday, March 10, the band is scheduled to arrive, and two days later, if all goes well, they'll be performing at the White House.

Colons A, p. 231

EXERCISE

- **1.** We will read works by the following poets: Emerson, Poe, Dickinson, and Frost.
- 2. (
- **3.** Sara arrived at the party lates she had trouble getting her car to start.
- 4. At the end of her lecture, Mrs. Bell had this to say: "as you have learned, the Romanticism of the nineteenth century was much more than an emphasis on romantic love. It was, in a way, an intellectual movement—a movement that gives us insight into the way authors of the nineteenth century viewed humanity."
- **5.** My goals are as follows: to go to college, to study medicine, and to become a surgeon.
- **6.** For her birthday, Sofia received these gifts a sweater, two books, gloves, and roses.
- **7.** The Tsongs donated several items for the raffle a lamp, two chairs, and some books.
- **8.** Helen stayed home yesterdays she wasn't feeling well.
- Patrick Henry offered these words on freedom: "give me liberty or give me death."
- **10.** Angela ordered three magazines: *Time, Essence,* and *The New Yorker*.

Colons B, p. 232

EXERCISE

- **1.** Mom frequently quotes from the Bible; her favorite quotation is from Exodus 1:6–15.
- **2.** Every morning at 7:00 A.M., the alarm clock goes off and the dog starts barking.
- 3. *C*
- **4.** Mira is reading *Gandhi* A *Life*, a biography of the Mahatma.
- Dear Mr. AdamsPlease acknowledge receipt of the enclosed shipment.Sincerely,Jeff Holt
- **6.** Under the couch I found the old copy of *Yodeling* A *Beginner's Primer* that I thought I had lost.
- **7.** Isn't II Samuel 6:14 the passage in the Bible in which David dances before the Lord?
- **8.** Dr. Sharif wrote a fascinating little book called *Tesellation*: The Art of Illusion.
- 9. (
- **10.** Between 3:30 and 5:00 every afternoon, the noise in the street is unbelievable.

Colons C, p. 233

EXERCISE

- 1. Dear Dr. Heather Williams
- 2. My sermon today comes from Psalm 91:4–5.
- **3.** Tonya will do her book report on *Asian American Dreams*: The Emergence of an *American People*.
- **4.** My father is reading *Galileo's Daughter A Historical Memoir of Science, Faith, and Love.*
- **5.** Ricardo, set your alarm for 5:15 A.M.: we have to pick up your grandfather at 7:00 A.M.
- **6.** The following are my favorite fantasy writers: Ursula K. Le Guin, Robert Holdstock, John Crowley, and J.R.R. Tolkien.

- 7. Jimmy had this to say about the new schedule adopted at last night's school board meeting: "I'm glad the school board approved the new schedule. I think it will be a benefit to students and teachers alike."
- **8.** After opening the elaborately wrapped present, Jane became confused: the box that someone had taken great pains to wrap was empty.
- **9.** Over the summer vacation, Lee visited four states: Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona.
- 10. No one expresses despair better than Shakespeare's doomed king Macbeths "Tomorrow and tomorrow and tomorrow / Creeps in this petty pace from day to day, / To the last syllable of recorded time."

Review A: Semicolons and Colons, p. 234

Colons may be correct in items 5 and 13 if the word following the colon is capitalized.

EXERCISE A

- **1.** My father drinks black coffee my mother prefers tea.
- 2. Dear Mrs. R. Volpe:
- **3.** All applicants for the job must furnish the following items of information, date of birth, grade in school, and names of two personal references.
- **4.** We had all been warned about the test nonetheless, few of us were prepared for it.
- **5.** We should take Jerry out to lunch he really came through for us on that project.
- **6.** These three girls have been nominated for vice-president of the class***** Siobhan Reilly, Olive Caccione, and Sarah Golder.
- 7. It had rained all morning at 1:00 P.M., however, the sun appeared.

- **8.** I thought you had read the book otherwise, I wouldn't have asked you about it.
- **9.** The candidate finished her speech with a final comment: "If I am elected, I will do everything in my power to fulfill the promises I have made."
- **10.** Richard bought a new CD titled *Julian Bream*: The *Ultimate Guitar Collection*.

- **11.** John 3:16 is probably the most famous scripture in the Bible.
- **12.** Jane went to the play with Cora, Peter, and David, and Alex, Jane's brother, went with Gary.
- **13.** Felix didn't get to sleep until 2:30 A.M_n he had to finish an important project.
- **14.** Karen has traveled to many places:
 Barcelona, Spain, London, England, and Sydney, Australia.
- **15.** The new reporters on the staff of the school newspaper are Joaquín Sunders, a sophomore, and Leslie Crim, a junior and Virgil Bates, a member of the senior class, is the new managing editor.

Review B: Semicolons and Colons, p. 235

Colons may be correct for items 7 and 11 if the word following the colon is capitalized.

EXERCISE **A**

- Here are my New Year's resolutions: to read more, to exercise more, and to eat fewer snacks.
- 2. Dear Mrs. Kay:
- **3.** At 5:45 P.M., Jocelyn and Theresa arrived at the auditorium. Jocelyn put up streamers, posters, and banners, and Theresa set up the sound equipment, chairs, and podium.

- **4.** Barry wants to title his autobiography *Barry****** *Retrospective of a Great Man.*
- **5.** The applicant was very nervous during the interview nonetheless, she got the job.
- **6.** Before making a hiring decision, the personnel director considered the following qualifications work experience, educational background, and personality.
- 7. The book was a conduit for her bad feelings it gave her a more positive outlook.
- **8.** The three students who are vying for first place in the talent show are Marla Jones, a singer, Jerry Green, a pianist, and Leslie Ricardo, a dancer.
- **9.** I am an excellent swimmer my brother, on the other hand, prefers skating.
- **10.** Three students received A's on the test**!** Johnnie B. Baker, Toni Mancuso, and Rory Milano.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Gary deserves to win; his science project is clearly the best in the room.
- **12.** Henry prefers Italian food Lisa prefers Chinese food.
- **13.** "Whither thou goest, I will go," as it says in Ruth 1:16.
- 14. The last words of the dying pirate were mysterious: "From the base of the torso tree, take long steps three. From that spot toward the shore, walk apace twenty more. There, if you stand at sunset's wane, you will see the shadow that leads to spoils and gain."
- **15.** I decided to decorate my room with some stuff I found in the attice a movie poster, which once belonged to my brother, an old New York Yankees pennant, the first pen-

nant I bought with my own money and a model of the original starship *Enterprise*.

Review C: Semicolons and Colons, p. 236

A colon may be substituted in item 2 and for the first semicolon in item 9 if the word following the colon is capitalized.

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. Mr. Jackson's plane arrived twenty minutes late because of the dense fog consequently, he missed the flight to Denver.
- **2.** The Arthurs are not home they've left for work.
- 3. Amy wanted to visit Tucson, San Diego, and Austin but Helen wanted to visit Seattle, Las Vegas, and Phoenix.
- **4.** The meeting is scheduled for 3:30 this afternoon: please don't be late.
- **5.** The following committees will report budget, membership, awards, and programs.

EXERCISE B

[6] Dear Sir or Madam:

[7] I am preparing a report on SETI, or the Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence, and I would like to be as well prepared as possible. I have already read *We Are Not Alone* The Continuing Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence by Walter Sullivan. [8] My science teacher has recommended that I get your opinion on SETI. She has also suggested that I read books by the following authors Carl Sagan, Frank Drake, and Jean Heidmann.

[9] I know that not all scientists are optimistic about the chances for extraterrestrial life; the book *Rare Earth*: Why Complex Life Is Uncommon in the Universe makes the case that earth is the only place in the universe where animal life lives. [10] I am eager to learn about your views on SETI. Thank you for your time; I hope to hear from you soon!

Yours sincerely,

Arundhati Chandrasekhar

Chapter 13: Italics, Quotation Marks, and Ellipsis Points, pp. 237–250

Italics and Titles, p. 237

EXERCISE A

- Eric's favorite painting is N.C. Wyeth's Robin Hood and His Mother on Their Way to Nottingham Fair.
- **2.** Have you ever read Mark Twain's <u>The</u> Adventures of Tom Sawyer?
- **3.** George Orwell's novels include <u>Animal</u> Farm and 1984.
- 4. The school drama group will stage The Tragedy of Julius Caesar next week.
- **5.** James Russell Lowell edited a magazine called the North American Review.
- **6.** Of all of Billy Joel's albums, I think that The Stranger is his best.
- **7.** My grandfather rarely misses an episode of Sixty Minutes.
- **8.** I can't decide which is the better film, Lawrence of Arabia or The Third Man.
- **9.** Have you listened to Ravel's long musical composition called <u>Bolero</u>?
- **10.** Donatello's <u>Julius Caesar</u> can be found in the Louvre, in Paris.

EXERCISE B

[11] Did you know that Silko's Ceremony was the first full-length work of fiction ever published by a Native American woman?
[12] Mia and I think the book is fantastic, but we also like Laguna Woman: Poems as well as Storyteller, two other books by Silko. [13] The librarian recommended to us Almanac of the Dead, but we haven't read it yet. [14] Mia is writing a documentary film about the fiction of Leslie Marmon Silko. [15] She wants to call the film The Storyteller's Voice.

Italics: Names, Letters, Symbols, and Foreign Words, p. 238

EXERCISE A

- **1.** The <u>Queen Elizabeth</u>, once a transatlantic ship, is now docked in California.
- **2.** Sally K. Ride, the first American woman in space, flew aboard <u>Challenger</u> on the seventh shuttle mission.
- **3.** Try the <u>pollo asado</u> with a little of that <u>mole</u> sauce.
- **4.** I know the writer of the article is enthusiastic, but she has used too many !'s.
- **5.** Pierre writes his <u>7</u>'s with a line through the middle.
- **6.** Do the words <u>dale</u> and <u>vale</u> mean the same thing?
- The book <u>Twenty Thousand Leagues Under</u> the <u>Sea</u> is set on a submarine called <u>Nautilus</u>.
- **8.** The Italian word <u>trattoria</u> is a term used for an inexpensive restaurant.
- **9.** In Spanish, the letter h is always silent.
- **10.** To praise a Chinese cook, use the expression ding hao, which means "excellent."

EXERCISE B

[11] Brad asked about his friend Derrick's model train named the Spirit of Des Moines.

[12] Derrick explained that he was inspired by the name of Charles Lindbergh's plane, the Spirit of St. Louis. [13] "What do you think of the Ghost of Christmas Past as the name for my model train?" Brad asked. Derrick said he didn't think it was the same kind of spirit.

[14] The word spirit has more than one meaning. [15] "If you do name it that, however," Derrick said, "paint the letters in alternating green and red, and make the G, C, and P in the name look creepy."

Italics Review, p. 239

EXERCISE A

- **1.** Anne Tyler's novel <u>Breathing Lessons</u> won a Pulitzer Prize.
- **2.** Nicole's mother reads <u>The Wall Street</u> Journal each morning during breakfast.
- **3.** Jorge and Melinda attended a performance of Mozart's Don Giovanni.
- **4.** Do you ever confuse handwritten 4's with 9's?
- **5.** Semper fidelis is the motto of the U.S. Marine Corps.
- **6.** I watched a TV show called <u>On the Ocean</u> <u>Floor</u> about the search to find the wreck of the Titanic.
- **7.** The t in the word beret is silent.
- **8.** Someone told Martha the & symbol was called an ampersand.
- **9.** There should be a show on TV called No Commercials.
- **10.** Tim dreams of taking a ride on the space shuttle Endeavour.

Exercise B

- **11.** Langston Hughes' autobiography is called The Big Sea.
- **12.** Gerald likes to do the crossword puzzle in The New York Times.
- **13.** The French merci and the Spanish gracias both mean "thank you."
- **14.** The new children's train at the park is called the Sutton Sidewinder.
- **15.** Edgar Lee Masters wrote Spoon River Anthology, a favorite of mine.
- **16.** Do you write capital <u>Q</u>'s with little curlicue tails?

- **17.** The # symbol on the telephone is the pound sign.
- **18.** Can you believe she has never seen the movie Star Wars?
- **19.** If the president flies in <u>Air Force One</u>, what does the vice president fly in?
- **20.** Mrs. Chang reminded us there is only one l in the word traveled.

Quotation Marks in Direct Quotations, p. 240 EXERCISE A

- 1. "Let's visit the children's museum," suggested Marcela, "and we'll be able to see the new robots they've added."
- **2.** Jerome said, "I think I may have solved the mystery"; we waited for him to continue.
- **3.** Don't most children know the song that begins, "Mary had a little lamb"?
- **4.** ••Is anyone in here?•• asked the visitor. ••Would someone please answer?••
- **5.** "If you could buy a mountain," asked Andrés, "which mountain would you buy?"

EXERCISE B

- **6.** ••I am the king of the world!•• the child shouted.
- 7. Jennifer referred to three of her pets as "the friendliest and easiest to handle": the striped kitten, the old Bassett Hound, and the parrot.
- **8.** Joel said, "In my hometown, we used to walk along the Mississippi River levee."
- **9.** "Rabbits," added Gwendolyn, "can make excellent pets for responsible pet owners."
- **10.** Theodore remarked, "This is my favorite poem"; we had heard Theodore say that about several different poems, however.

Quotation Marks in Dialogue and Passages A, p. 241

EXERCISE

1. "What are we going to be studying today?" asked Raymond. "We will be studying three sonnets written in three different periods of history," answered the teacher.

- 2. The treasurer of the club said, "Here's the report." We're not doing as badly as we thought," said the club president.
- **3.** "Which part should I read?" asked the actor. "Read only the first and third paragraphs," answered the director, "and omit the rest of the page."
- **4. ••**I read about Winston Churchill today, **••** said Jacqueline. **••**Did you find it interesting? **••** asked Connie. **••**Oh, yes, **••** answered Jacqueline, **••**I'm going to be writing my history report about him. **••**
- 5. "People in history class say clever things,"
 Rita complained. "I could never be that
 witty." Yasmin agreed. "I have trouble
 staying awake," she said. "It's my first
 class after lunch."
- **6. ****Are you coming with us to see the French film? ** asked Pierre. **Yes, I think I will, ** answered Clara. ******It will be a good opportunity to practice my listening skills in French. **
- 7. "The cats will need fresh food and water twice a day while I'm gone," said Miki.

 ""You don't have to worry," answered
 Tsiyoshi. "They're in good hands with me."
- 8. **I need to schedule an appointment for Wednesday,** said the anxious caller.

 Mode what time would you like to come in? asked the receptionist. **Please schedule me for the first opening in the morning,** answered the patient.
- 9. "Who wants to go to the zoo with me today?" asked Mrs. Carter. "I do," said Juan. "I can't go today," said Rudolfo.
 "I have to stay home and study."

10. Shekoufeh asked, "Do you know what my name means in Persian?" No," answered Amy. "What does it mean?" "It's a type of flower," explained Shekoufeh.

Quotation Marks in Dialogue and Passages B, p. 242

EXERCISE

- 1. "Did you read the short story for English class?" asked Melvin. "Yes, I read it last night," answered María, "and I really enjoyed it."
- 2. "Are you going on the class field trip?" asked Sheila. "I've never visited the natural science museum before," answered Marc, "so I signed up for the longer field trip on Friday." "Then I'll be riding the bus with you," answered Sheila. "I signed up for the longer visit, also."
- 3. "I can't wait to see you and Uncle Tomás," said Esperanza. "It won't be much longer," answered Pam. "Your uncle and I will be on the next flight to Atlanta."
- 4. "My parents just bought a new car," said Douglas. "What kind of car did they buy?" asked Sarah. "I don't know what make it is," answered Douglas, "but it is a hideous bright green color."
- For the state of the can beg, roll over, and eat! ** Eating is not a trick! answered Roberto. That's what you think, added Camila.
- 6. "When I was six, I could do cartwheels and flips," said Sergei. "Can you still do any acrobatics?" asked Natasha. "Only in the water," answered Sergei.

- 7. "What did the coach ask us to do first?" asked the swimmer in the second lane.

 9 "We are supposed to warm up for fifteen minutes with dolphin kicks," answered another swimmer.
- **8.** "Which book did you choose to read?" asked Terry. "I read a biography of composer Igor Stravinski," answered Kimberly.
- **9.** "Are you going to the park with us?" asked Jane. "What time are you leaving?" asked Karl. "As soon as you're ready," answered Jane. "Let's go right now," announced Karl.
- 10. "History class was interesting today," said Noriyuki. "It was like hearing a bunch of short stories," answered Carlos. "Some of those short stories seemed like tall tales to me!" said Noriyuki.

Quotation Marks and Titles, p. 243

EXERCISE A

- 1. The TV show's "Hooray for Hollywood" episode contains some of the cast's best moments.
- 2. Mrs. Tennant told the class that the essay "How I Spent My Summer Vacation" on her desk had no name on it.
- **3.** Tyler and Guillaume studied the imagery in the poem **6** Ex-Basketball Player. **9**
- **4.** Do you recall reading an article called ******Cooking with Bananas**?
- **5.** Ray thought the setting of **Stopping by** Woods on a Snowy Evening was very beautiful.
- **6.** Chapter 4 of the book is *****Koala Bears and Other Hazards, ***** not *****Life Down Under. *****
- 7. Devika gets very teary-eyed singing "Auld Lang Syne."
- **8.** Tony is writing an article for the school newspaper. "School in Space?" is the title.

- **9.** The book contains three sections: "Home," "Abroad," and "Return."
- **10.** Tara can recite the lines of "Heart! We will forget him!" from memory.

EXERCISE B

[11] Miguel got the idea from reading "The Pit and the Pendulum," which reminded him of study hall. [12] He used ideas from the story for his first episode, which he called "The Pencil and the Ticking Clock." [13] The second was called "Gym," based on "The Masque of the Red Death." [14] "The Lock on My Locker Is Broken" was inspired in part by Poe's "The Gold Bug." [15] The final episode of Miguel's film was called "The Fall of Greenland Greenhouse," based on Poe's "The Fall of the House of Usher."

Single Quotation Marks, Slang, and Technical Terms, p. 244

EXERCISE A

- 1. "I'm not sure," she said, "who first said "Remember the Alamo!"
- **2.** Marion said, "Then he said, "Stay away from that tree."
- **3.** "I read in the newspaper," Todd said, "that many teens enjoy mountain biking."
- **4.** "Wasn't it Sandra," she asked, "who said, "I'll remember to pick up the dessert"?"
- **5.** Akela said, "My favorite poem to read aloud is The Hollow Men."
- **6.** The coach yelled, "Who said Time out"?"
- **7.** "Irving Berlin wrote the song God Bless America," Suki informed the class.
- **8.** "It was Timothy," Dan explained, "who came up with our team's slogan We shall meet our obstacles with confidence."
- **9.** "No one knows who first used the expression 'G. I. Joe,'" Dr. Shaw said.
- **10. ****According to Mrs. Simmons, ** Jim mentioned, ******Everything comes to an end eventually. ***

EXERCISE B

Responses will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **11.** Did that reporter just mention "Filegate"?
- **12.** Do you know anyone who still says "groovy"?

- **13.** "Mate" is the Australian way to say friend.
- **14.** Ted said, "I remember when all the kids said 'bad' when they meant 'good."
- **15.** Have you ever heard computer fans talk about "bytes" and "bits"?

Ellipsis Points, p. 245

EXERCISE

- 1. "In • "The Grass We Eat," Brent discusses the variety of edible leaves that people consume all over the world."
- **2.** Marianne wrote in her essay, "I believe children are the key to our future. . . . Therefore, we should try to nurture them."
- **3.** "Elizabeth has worked as a secretary and reporter. • She has also appeared regularly on radio shows."
- **4.** "Roberto has written articles for various newspapers. • He has also written essays published in scholarly journals."
- **5.** "Tom is a very funny person....[*\mathcal{I}\] t is no mistake that he received the award for best new comedian."

Quotation Marks Review A, p. 246

EXERCISE

- I admire Nikki Giovanni's poem, "Poem for a Lady Whose Voice I Like."
- **2.** Stevie Wonder wrote the song "You Are the Sunshine of My Life."
- "Where are you going?" asked my mother.
 "It's getting late."
- **4.** This quotation is from my English class essay entitled **6** Understanding Me. **9**
- **5.** Margaret said, "They paved the old dirt road and put up a parking lot in the old wheat field."
- **6. ••**I'll try, **••** exclaimed Alex, **••**but I don't know if I'll be able to convince him. **••**
- 7. "My sister's poem for class," said Bill, "is about birds and is called The Flight of the Free."
- 8. "Where are you going?" asked Stacey.
 "Don't you realize we could be late for the concert?"

- **9. ••**I think Mary said **•**Walk two blocks and then turn right, **•••** said Mark with a quizzical look.
- **10.** The horse that won the race was known to be a "mudder."
- **11. •••** Jailhouse Rock**•** is one of my all-time favorite songs, **••** Aunt Missy told us.
- **12.** "Has anybody seen my new green jacket?" quizzed Jack. "I can't find it anywhere!"
- **13.** The first poem in Michael's collection is called **"The Mystery."**
- **14.** As soon as Jed turned the corner, he heard a man shout, "Look! That bird just stole my sandwich!"
- **15.** Every time she walks by the polling center, Demetria notices the sign for Kelly "The Kid" Turner, who is running for county commissioner.
- **16.** Of all the short stories written in our summer writing class, my favorite was Julie Sue's "Famous Fifteen Minutes." [or . . . was "Julie Sue's Famous Fifteen Minutes."]
- **17.** Suzanne said, "Have you got a parrot?"
- **18. "**Can you believe this?" remarked Keshon. "Last night I had a dream that I was a cartoon."
- 19. Mr. Norton said, "Class, please turn to page 167 and read the essay titledStrengthening Your Writing.""
- **20.** "When I asked Mom for permission," said Georgina, "she told me 'Okay, but only as long as you clean your room first."

Quotation Marks Review B, p. 247

EXERCISE

- **1.** "The advertising slogan, "Try It and Buy It," is puzzling to me," Kim said.
- **2.** *C*
- **3.** "My favorite Beatles' song is 'Let It Be,'" Carlo said.
- 4. Andrea said, "The sign on my cousin's bedroom door reads Enter at Your Own Risk."
- **5.** "The fish is swimming in circles," said Marco. "I wonder why it's doing that."

- **6.** "According to the sign-up sheet," announced Miss Green, "Annie will read her poem, called Morning Glories," right now."
- 7. "I don't mind being called "Lefty," retorted Uncle Miguel. "There's nothing wrong with being left-handed."
- **8.** Yesterday Dad told us that one of his favorite songs is "Desperado."
- **9.** In a quiet whisper, Millicent asked, "Did you hear what she just said?"
- **10.** The guide told the tourists, "Remember three things: Stay together on the trail, listen to my instructions, and have fun!"

Review A: Italics and Quotation Marks, p. 248 EXERCISE A

- Tomorrow's history assignment is reading Chapter 9, "The Middle Ages in England."
- **2.** Two of her favorite old-time movies are Foreign Correspondent and The Maltese Falcon.
- **3.** In "Silent Snow, Secret Snow," a short story by Conrad Aiken, a boy thinks he hears snow falling, but there is none.
- **4.** "Joseph and His Brothers, a novel by Thomas Mann, is based on a Biblical legend," Arthur said.
- **5.** My favorite aunt subscribes to <u>The Wall</u> <u>Street Journal</u>, a newspaper devoted to business and financial news.

EXERCISE **B**

- **6.** Did the sign say "Slow" or "Stop"?
- **7.** Our favorite proverb is this one: "Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom."
- **8. ***Actually, no camera is truly automatic, she explained.
- **9.** Mr. Pakunas asked, "How and why does osmosis take place?"

- **10.** "When you answer me," the officer barked explosively, "call me 'Sir."
- 11. The following students from our school have entered a contest called *Talented Teens**: Ned Baum, Lucia Gaines, and Estelle Peterson.
- **12.** "Have you read Eudora Welty's story A Worn Path"? he asked.
- 13. Wasn't it Shakespeare who wrote,Ill blows the wind that profits nobody
- **14.** A delighted child screamed, "It's snowing!"
- **15.** ••No, I have no definite plans for Saturday•• said Betty.

Review B: Italics, Quotation Marks, and Ellipsis Points, p. 249

EXERCISE A

Responses will vary. Sample responses are given.

- **1.** ships or airplanes: the <u>Lusitania</u>, the <u>Batwing</u>
- **2.** songs: "The Sound of Silence," "Love Letters Straight from the Heart"
- **3.** albums: <u>Dark Side of the Moon</u>, Watercolors
- 4. poems: "Uphill," "Ulysses"
- **5.** periodicals: Newsweek, Cricket

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Courtney has an uncle in Madrid • and a great-aunt in Istanbul.
- **7.** The tower jutted • at an angle not exactly perpendicular to the ground.
- **8.** Warren is a big fan of Romantic poets, but he does not enjoy reading Wordsworth. • • Warren says Blake is more interesting.
- **9.** Theodore's favorite tree is the pecan. . . . There is a small grove of pecan trees behind his house, near the creek.

10. Julie is the highest scorer on the volleyball team. . . . [5]he was awarded a scholarship.

Review C: Italics, Quotation Marks, and Ellipsis Points, p. 250

EXERCISE A

- **1.** One of my favorite poems by Langston Hughes is "Dreams," which is included in his collection The Dream Keeper and Other Poems.
- **2.** "Through the Tunnel," a short story by Doris Lessing, deals with the transition from childhood to adulthood.
- **3.** I particularly enjoy reading the food section in the Wednesday edition of the Washington Post.
- **4.** I hope to see the movie <u>Star Wars</u> when it is shown on television.
- **5.** I have begun reading Chapter 13, "The Story of Maize," in C.W. Ceram's book The First American.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Theo exclaimed, ••I can't believe I ate the whole thing!
- 7. "It's unfortunate that you did," said the doctor.
- **8.** The coach asked, "Who is on first?"
- **9.** ••Never fear!•• Jacques said with a smile.
- **10.** The moral of one of Aesop's tales is "Beware of grasping at shadows; you just may lose the substance."
- **11.** "Actually, I'll be free this afternoon," she commented.
- **12.** Jamie said, **6** The common saying **6** familiarity breeds contempt may be true, but I prefer the saying **6** absence makes the heart grow fonder. **999**
- **13. ••**Why, oh, why, oried Eric, **••**do we always wait until the last minute!
- **14.** The driver asked, "Whatever happened to the sign Falling Rocks"?"
- **15.** The child declared, "I'd like to come with you to the park."

Chapter 14: Punctuation, pp. 251-268

Apostrophes A, p. 251

EXERCISE A

- 1. Columbia's men
- 2. children's games
- 3. Alcott's books
- **4.** the table's legs
- **5.** Euripides plays
- **6.** Ms. Andrews house
- 7. those drivers cabs
- 8. a citizen's views
- 9. Lois's lunch
- 10. Alvin's skis

EXERCISE B

- 11. *C*
- 12. my two coaches pep talk
- 13. the men's team
- 14. four geese's eggs
- **15.** *C*

Apostrophes B, p. 252

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. Is this your encyclopedia?
- **2.** He bought their puppy.
- **3.** That dachshund is someone s dog.
- **4.** This is our bookcase.
- **5.** The environment is everyone's concern.

EXERCISE B

- **6.** Jonah and Billie spent the day at the mechanic's, which was not either sidea of fun.
- **7.** One dog at the show wore a little suit; its owner wore a matching dress.
- **8.** *C*
- **9.** Renaldo was looking for a pencil to borrow, so I loaned him yours.
- **10.** Patrice and Jeremy have been each other's best friend since they were born.

Apostrophes C, p. 253

EXERCISE A

- 1. Kate and Ali's camera
- **2.** the Juarez family's dog

- 3. his sister-in-law's painting
- **4.** Goldsmith, Moss, and Schwartz's books
- 5. Mark Twain's and Hawthorne's works

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary.

- **6.** Molly s and his science fair project involved a few controlled explosions.
- **7.** I admire both Sheena's and Vaughn's determination in finishing the race.
- 8. (
- **9.** Gia's and Bert's batches of cookies taste exactly the same.
- **10.** After the dance, they plan to go to Harrison and Sullivan's Cafe.

Apostrophes Review A, p. 254

EXERCISE

- 1. Harold's and her parakeet
- **2.** that telescope of yours
- 3. James's garden
- **4.** *C*
- **5.** the FBI's investigation
- **6.** its bottom drawer
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** the football of his
- **9.** the monkeys tails
- **10.** someone else's nameplate

Apostrophes D, p. 255

EXERCISE A

1. won t

6. it s

2. we re

7. you•re

3. she s

8. he d

4. weren t

9. we d

5. he s

10. should ve

EXERCISE B

There's Theirs a great exhibit at the Philadelphia Maritime Museum. Im sure your going to enjoy it because of it's superior quality and because of your you're interest in crew races. The exhibit features Thomas Eakins, who's paintings are incredibly lifelike. Some of his works are of crews rowing in Philadelphia. To make his

paintings of the crews accurate, Eakins first took they re pictures. Then he made elaborate sketches, figuring out the exact perspective. They re there Their all their in the exhibit—the photographs, sketches, and finished paintings.

Apostrophes E, p. 256

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** ABC s
- **2.** *I*'s and *O*'s
- 3. Oh's and Ah's
- **4.** *t* s
- **5.** so⁹s
- **6.** *Jr.* s
- 7. if's, and's, or but's
- **8.** 1950°s
- **9.** all of the 7°s
- **10.** *X* s and *O* s

EXERCISE B

- 11. please's and thank you's
- **12.** 3 s
- **13.** @ s
- **14.** / s
- **15.** 4's and 5's
- **16.** *P.S.* s
- **17.** 85 s
- 18. yes's and no's
- **19.** oh s
- **20.** *9s

Apostrophes Review B, p. 257

EXERCISE

- 1. the one UFO's behavior
- **2.** the bus's driver's hat [*or* the bus driver's hat]
- **3.** someone else's
- 4. (
- 5. (
- **6.** Mr. Jones's address
- **7.** four 7's
- **8.** too many therefore's
- 9. a women's shop
- **10.** my sister-in-law's job

Apostrophes Review C, p. 258

EXERCISE

- **1.** After a week's absence the student had a lot of schoolwork to do.
- **2.** Always remember to dot your i°s.
- **3.** Students papers are on file in the main office.
- **4.** The Washingtons house was flooded last week.
- **5.** Bad weather forced the Lees to cancel the children's party.
- **6.** In a democracy everyone's vote counts.
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** The geese hissed at Fiona's and my bicycles.
- **9.** The judges were impressed by the dancer's skill and by her poise.
- **10.** None of the clerks could find the men's shirts.

Hyphens A, p. 259

EXERCISE A

- **1.** correct
- 4. incorrect
- 2. incorrect
- 5. incorrect
- **3.** incorrect

EXERCISE B

- 6. can-not
- 11. syl-la-ble
- **7.** un-do
- **12.** No hyphen
- 8. re-turn
- **13.** chill-ing
- **9.** No hyphen
- **14.** No hyphen
- 10. tech-nique
- **15.** anat-o-my

Hyphens B, p. 260

EXERCISE A

- 1. twenty-four delegates
- 2. an ex-football player
- 3. a self-conscious dancer
- **4.** a vacation in mid-July
- 5. one-third cup of milk
- **6.** the president-elect of France
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** one-fourth tablespoon of oil
- 9. a pro-Russian trade agreement
- **10.** *C*

EXERCISE B

- 11. *C*
- 12. an intentionally dropped ball
- 13. thirty-two students
- 14. *C*
- **15.** a pre-Colombian vase
- 16. *C*
- **17.** one fourth of the time
- 18. her great-uncle
- 19. the best all-around player
- **20.** a play that is well written

Hyphens C, p. 261

EXERCISE A

- 1. a self-absorbed actor
- 2. an ex-scientist
- 3. two-thirds teaspoon of salt
- 4. eighty-eight keys
- **5.** three-quarters cup of flour
- **6.** a convention in mid-February
- **7.** *C*
- **8.** the secretary-elect of the council
- **9.** a post-Cold War treaty
- 10. a dictionary that is up-to-date

EXERCISE B

- 11. one third of the students
- **12.** *C*
- **13.** a well-known song
- **14.** the first backyard basketball court
- **15.** a pre-Victorian poet
- **16.** a recently added class
- 17. twenty-two blackbirds
- 18. *C*
- 19. his ex-father-in-law
- **20.** *C*

Dashes, p. 262

EXERCISE

- In any inclement weather—snow, sleet, hail, or heavy rain—we like to take the vehicle with four-wheel drive.
- **2.** The score was absurdly low—a total of only forty points—for a varsity game.

- **3.** Teya has four other pets—a dog, two ferrets, and a Shetland pony.
- **4.** "Could I please speak to—" George began, but he had already been put on hold.
- **5.** The goal of the game—checkmating the opponent's king—often gets more difficult the fewer pieces you have left.
- **6.** Yvonne's uncle moved to Switzerland to realize his life-long dream—becoming a world-class yodeler.
- Your application—you should have been told this earlier—was supposed to have been mailed no later than last week.
- **8.** "What—" Pedro started to say but stopped himself. "Elian, is that really you?"
- **9.** The clutter in our neighbor's backyard—two cars, three sheds, a swingset, and a life-size metal sculpture of a mastodon—had already attracted quite a bit of attention.
- 10. What I need—I'm sorry; I should have said it more clearly—is a small stone, not a small stoat.

Parentheses, p. 263

Exercise

- **1.** She began painting six years ago (that was 1997) and hasn't stopped since.
- **2.** My grandmother lives in Tucson (it's in southern Arizona) and likes it there.
- **3.** Have you ever seen a saguaro (a kind of cactus)?
- **4.** There are lots of cactuses in southern Arizona. (Is the plural of *cactus cacti?*)
- **5.** My favorite time of the day is sunset (I'm never awake for sunrise).
- **6.** When the sun sets (about six o'clock this time of year) over the desert, the sky lights up.
- **7.** My sister Carla (she is only ten) has started painting as well.
- **8.** I don't do anything artistic myself; I'm more of an athlete. (I can't sit still for very long.)
- **9.** While my grandmother and sister paint, I go hiking. (Hiking the mountains and canyons in Arizona is incredible!)

10. I tell them that when I become a world-famous mountain climber (which should happen when I'm about twenty-five) I'll let them paint my portrait.

Brackets, p. 264

EXERCISE

Central High School and Johnson High School have a rivalry that "goes back decades, to when I attended class here," Principal Debra Lawrence says. "At the start, it was Central who beat us at every sport. Now, we here at Johnson can hold our own with anyone in the district."

Coach Chan agrees. "When I first got here, all anyone would ever talk about was the Central game. So far, we've won six and lost four, which isn't too bad, considering our opposition."

As one student expressed the rivalry, "Off the field, we're best friends, but when we're playing each other, there's nobody we want to beat more than Central."

- 1. One student reports that "there's nobody we [Johnson High teams] want to beat more than Central."
- **2.** Principal Debra Lawrence says that the rivalry "goes back decades, to when [she] attended class here [at Johnson]."
- **3.** Coach Chan attests that when he "first got here [to Johnson High School], all anyone would ever talk about was the Central game."
- **4.** Do you agree with Coach Chan that Johnson's record of six wins and four losses against Central High School "isn't too bad, considering our Johnson's opposition"?
- **5.** Principal Lawrence wasn't exaggerating when she said, "At the start, it was Central who beat us [Johnson High School] at every sport."

Hyphens, Parentheses, Dashes, Brackets, p. 265

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. proof-read
- 2. No hyphen
- 3. sem-i-con-scious
- 4. No hyphen

- 5. No hyphen
- 6. No hyphen
- 7. No hyphen
- 8. ab-stract
- 9. love-ly
- 10. No hyphen

EXERCISE B

- **11.** D [*or* P]
- **14.** D [or P]
- **12.** D [*or* P]
- **15.** B

13. D

Review A: Punctuation, p. 266

EXERCISE

- **1.** The firefighters boots were at the foot of their beds.
- **2.** Jana wrote her 7°s with a cross bar, as the French write theirs.
- **3.** After three days of traveling, both Miller's and Allan's teams reached the mountains.
- **4.** The director listened attentively to everyone's ideas.
- **5.** The editor-in-chief's suggestions were good ones.
- **6.** Sally's and James' reports each had two grades: one for content and one for form.
- **7.** Carlos and Bobby's plan helped in the search for the children's dog.
- **8.** Both the Wilsons and the Thomases picnics were held in the Thomases backyard.
- **9.** Your letters are hard to read because you never cross your *t*²s.
- **10.** Most of the FBI's agents doubted the woman's word.

Review B: Punctuation, p. 267

EXERCISE **A**

- **1.** [c] a blue-gray shirt
- 2. [b] NASA's plans
- **3.** [b] his self-sufficiency
- **4.** [a] a well-done steak
- **5.** [c] forty-four teammates

EXERCISE **B**

6. The Steiners—I don't believe you've met them—are neighbors of ours.

- **7.** We do odd jobs to earn money—washing windows, mowing lawns, cleaning basements.
- **8.** The index includes more data on this experiment. (See page 783 [Graph 3].)
- 9. Everyone knows the first words— "Four score and seven years ago . . ." of Lincoln's "Gettysburg Address." [or . . . ("Four score and seven years ago . . .") . . .]
- **10.** Alec Guinness (1914–2000) was a star of theater and film.

Review C: Punctuation, p. 268

EXERCISE A

- 1. [b] your brother-in-law's name
- 2. [a] Thirty-third Street
- **3.** [a] twelve o clock
- **4.** [a] your self-esteem
- 5. [a] Jonah and Sam's pet

Exercise B Answers involving dashes and parentheses may vary.

- **6.** Did you realize that my aunt (my mother's sister) is married to your uncle Emil?
- **7.** The zookeeper's announcement—"A cat has escaped!"—did not alarm us.
- **8.** My sister—she's a copywriter for an advertising company—writes poetry in her spare time.
- **9.** We dined at the home of Mrs. Algoma Whitefeather (the former Algoma Tucker).
- **10.** Mayor Jenkins stated, "The problem [the current crime wave] is under control."

Original content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 15: Spelling, pp. 269-295

Good Spelling Habits, p. 269

EXERCISE A

- 1. George Lucas produced his first film when college
 he was a collage student.
- **2.** The film, entiteled *THX 1138:4EB*, won first prize at the National Student Film Festival in 1967.
- **3.** Upon gradiation from the University of Southern California, Lucas made *American Graffiti*.
- **4.** Featured in a miner role in that film was newcomer Harrison Ford.
- **5.** American Graffiti was such a popular movie that Lucas was able to pursuade a major Hollywood studio to support "a little space movie."
- **6.** That "little movie" evolved into *Star Wars*, success which was an overnight sucess.
- 7. Lucas then hired Lawrence Kasdan to complete a script for the sequal, *The Empire Strikes Back*.
- **8.** Kasdan also wrote the third film of the *Star* trilogy Wars trillogy, *The Return of the Jedi*.
- **9.** The *Star Wars* vehicles made a star out of *actor* acter Harrison Ford.
- **10.** Kasdan's next project, *Raiders of the Lost Ark,* brought Ford the <u>roll</u> of a lifetime—Indiana Jones.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** liability, perspiration, <u>souvinir</u>, benefited *souvenir*
- **12.** <u>suger</u>, lightning, coming, grammar <u>sugar</u>
- **13.** priority, answer, <u>athelete</u>, calendar <u>athlete</u>

- **14.** conscience, February, villain, <u>maintainance</u> <u>maintenance</u>
- **15.** straight, <u>seperate</u>, dissimilar, Tuesday *separate*

ie and ei, p. 270

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. (
- **2.** Stripping all the <u>biege</u> paint off the old table was quite an achievement.
- **3.** Bert pulled in the horse's reins and brought the sliegh to a stop.
- 4. (
- **5.** The automobile manufacturers concede that *diesel* deisel engines are more efficient.
- **6.** One of Brazil's chief exports to foriegn countries is cocoa.
- **7.** A theif has succeeded in seizing the diamonds.
- **8.** The tool shed contained <u>niether</u> shovels nor rakes.
- **9.** Because he is a weight lifter, Hugo eats protein plenty of protien daily.
- **10.** The <u>preist</u> received his visitors in the garden at the back of the cathedral.

EXERCISE B

- 11. friend
- 14. leisure
- 12. achievement
- **15.** either
- 13. received

-cede, -ceed, and -sede, p. 271

EXERCISE A

- 1. recede
- 6. accede
- 2. preceded
- 7. succeed
- 3. conceded
- 8. exceed
- **4.** supersede
- **9.** intercede
- **5.** proceed
- 10. succeed

EXERCISE B

- preceded 11. The sound of loud laughter preseded Paul into the room.
- proceeded **12.** The rookie player proceded to become a star outfielder.
- **13.** Before the tides resede, we'll unload the freight from the ship at the pier.
- **14.** The lawyer promised to intersede with the police for her client.
- 15. *C*
- **16.** Do you think the others will acceed to our plan?
- **17.** During the argument, Matt refused to conceed a single point.
- **18.** *C*
- **19.** The substitute teacher's plans superceded those of Mr. Beasley.
- **20.** It is wise not to excede the speed limit.

Adding Prefixes, p. 272

EXERCISE

Answers may vary slightly.

- 1. redecorate
- 11. unpack
- 2. unnecessary
- **12.** improve
- **3.** reelection
- **13.** derail
- 4. disservice
- **14.** undo
- **5.** impossible
- **15.** prefabricate
- 6. mismatched
- **16.** reevaluate
- **7.** preview
- 17. deconstruct
- 8. deregulate
- 18. misjudged
- 9. illegible
- **19.** illogical
- 10. disembark
- **20.** reenergize

Suffixes -ly and -ness, p. 273

EXERCISE A

- 1. severely
- **6.** barrenness

2. tidily

- **7.** bravely
- **3.** freshness

- **8.** curliness
- **4.** socially
- **9.** totally
- **5.** carelessness
- **10.** funniness

EXERCISE B

11. *C*

courageously 12. The young officer courageousely performed his duties.

rapidly

- **13.** Thea rowed her boat rapiddly across the lake.
 - cheerfulness
- **14.** Darnell's <u>cheerfullness</u> lifted my spirits.
- **15.** The letter was signed, "Yours truely, A Secret Admirer."
- 16. *C*

sweetness

- **17.** The sweettness of the lemonade was created with an artificial sweetener.
- **18.** These flower arrangements are really lovly!
- **19.** The saltyness of the potato soup caused Ron not to eat it.

inventiveness

20. Lisa's inventivness is legendary.

Silent *e*, p. 274

EXERCISE A

- 1. scaring
- **6.** pronounceable
- **2.** desirable
- **7.** defenseless
- 3. separated
- 8. confinement

4. finest

- 9. opportunity
- **5.** retiring
- **10.** continuous

EXERCISE B

- 11. nineth, hopeful, hoping
 - ninth
- **12.** advertisement, arguement, scary

argument

13. mileage, rareity, coping

rarity

14. frustrated, laminated, eraseable

15. writeing, dancing, making

writing

16. discouragment, taped, safest

discouragement

17.	movable, <u>believeable</u> , u	ndertaker	16.	stabbed, trimed, co	oped _	trimmed
	believable		17.	taning, redder, fogg	gier	tanning
18.	laced, shaking, eliteist		18.	rigging, stirring, sn	obish_	snobbish
	elitist			alarmist, hiting, sac		
19.	9. <u>ensnareing</u> , movement, awful <u>ensnaring</u>			pretending, acquitt		
20.	baking, intimidateing, b	piting	Pre	fixes and Suffixes Re	eview, r	o. 277
	intimidating			RCISE	′•	
Wo	rds Ending in <i>y</i> , p. 275		1.	discontent	14.	conveyable
	RCISE		2.	unnatural	15.	deployment
1.	played 1	1. flying	3.	immobile	16.	annoying
2.	carrying 1	2. easily	4.	totally	17.	bagged
3.	business 1	3. hurried	5.	sedately	18.	regrettable
4.	laid 1	4. hungrily	6.	foreignness	19.	stunning
5.	enjoyable 1	5. delayed	7.	carelessness	20.	plateful
6.	relayed 1	6. nuttier	8.	daring	21.	arrangement
7.	trying 1	7. said	9.	nicest	22.	resolutely
8.	spied 1	8. curried	10.	courageous	23.	deniable
9.	scurrying 1	9. flies	11.	denied	24.	merriment
10.	enviable 2	0. annoying	12.	replying	25.	alarmist
Doi	ubling Final Consonants,	p. 276	13.	hastiness		
	RCISE A	P	For	ming Plurals of Nou	ns A, p.	278
		6. happened		RCISE A	,,,	
2.	committing	7. perplexed	1.	keys	11.	crutches
3.	shopper	8. snowing	2.	bananas	12.	bushes
4.	actor	9. chanting	3.	poxes	13.	incinerators
5.	referral 1	0. beginner	4.	countries	14.	crates
Exe	RCISE B		5.	bunches	15.	toys
11.	fixxed, patted, imported	fixed	6.	athletes	16.	foxes
				kisses	17.	bunnies
12.	entrapped, readding, re	ferrea	8.	plays	18.	pushes
	reading		9.	jinxes	19.	waltzes
13.	jumped, guffawwing, ri	unner	10.	cries	20.	prefixes
	guffawing		Exe	RCISE B		
14.	transmittable, cropped,	<u>unforgetable</u>	21.	We went to the cos	tume sl	hop to see what
	unforgettable			kinds of costumes	they ha	d hanging on the
15.	packking, bowed, drop	ped		racks rackes.	-	
	packing		22.	Several boxxes held	d face p	paints and
				temporary-color ha	-	

Accessories

- 23. Accessorys such as wigs, hats, purses, fans, and eyeglasses were also displayed.
- **24.** Shallow trayes beneath the glass counter displayed rings, necklaces, and fake fingernails.
- **25.** After looking at an assortment of fake noses, masks, fake wounds, and eye patchs, I changed my mind and decided to go as a pirate.

Forming Plurals of Nouns B, p. 279

EXERCISE A

1. roofs

6. sheaves

2. wives

- **7.** tomatoes
- **3.** mottos [or mottoes]
- 8. wolves

4. patios

9. lives

5. ratios

10. beliefs

EXERCISE B

- **11.** tempos, reefs, knifes
- **12.** themselfs, cliffs, torpedoes ___themselves
- **13.** chefs, studioes, pianos _ studios
- shelves **14.** igloos, shelfs, tariffs ____
- Eskimos **15.** altos, mosquitoes, Eskimoes

Forming Plurals of Nouns C, p. 280

EXERCISE A

1. teeth

- **6.** women
- **2.** salmon [or salmons]
- **7.** spacecraft

3. feet

8. Lice

4. geese

9. sheep

5. Chinese

10. pliers

EXERCISE B

councilmen

- 11. The city councilmans voted to table three issues until after elections.
- **12.** Ms. Robles, the art teacher, distributed rulers and scissorses to the classes.
- **13.** All of the park rangers wore binocularses around their necks.

- **14.** The team of archaeologists discovered two new specieses of dinosaurs.
- **15.** Male mooses can weigh over 1,500 pounds.

Review of Forming Plurals of Nouns A, p. 281

EXERCISE

1. alleys

14. houses

2. geese

- 15. binoculars
- 3. stitches
- **16.** tomatoes
- 4. halves
- 17. knives
- **5.** theories
- **18.** royalties
- **6.** echoes
- 19. brushes

7. jeans

20. oxen

8. roofs

- **21.** strengths
- 9. burglaries 10. gases
- 22. children **23.** donkeys
- 11. dishes
- **12.** wives
- 24. Sioux **25.** counties

13. mice

Compound Nouns, p. 282

EXERCISE A

- 1. backpacks
- 7. justices of the peace
- **2.** old-timers
- **8.** navel oranges
- 3. blueberries **4.** ex-senators
- **5.** fathers-in-law
- **9.** maids-of-honor
- **10.** Japanese
- **6.** fingernails
- **Americans**

EXERCISE B

- 11. tablecloths
- **14.** editors in chief
- 12. sisters-in-law
- 15. Asian Americans
- 13. candlesticks

Words from Other Languages, p. 283

EXERCISE

seraphs /seraphim

- 1. The painting depicted three seraph with angelic faces.
- 2. Marcos printed copies of the datum he found on the Internet.
- **3.** Lunar and solar eclipses are not common phenomenon.

- *indexes /indices* **4.** Thea consulted several <u>index</u> before she found the information she needed.
- **5.** To qualify for the scholarship, an applicant would have to meet several criterion.
- **6.** The detective described several basis for his theory.

media /mediums

- **7.** Which of these <u>medium</u> do you like best: radio, television, or newspaper? cactuses /cacti
- **8.** The Hammonds planted <u>cactus</u> beneath their windows as a security technique.
- **9.** Your research paper should prove one thesis, not two thesis.
- **10.** Part of Taylor's job is to type memoranda /memorandums memorandum.
 - **11.** For the geometry exam, I memorized five formulae /formulas mathematical formula.
 - **12.** "Do you handle <u>crisis</u> well?" asked the fire chief of the job applicant.
 - radii /radiuses **13.** Our homework is to measure the radius of these circles.
 - alumni **14.** Bradley and Oscar are alumnus of my high school.
 - appendixes (appendices **15.** Maria consulted two of the appendix for further information.
 - **16.** For tomorrow's class, read the chapter on bacteria bacterium.
 - **17.** David placed the quotation in parenthesis. antennae lantennas
 - **18.** The tiny insect had two antenna on its head.
 - 19. In his psychology class, Raleigh studied several interesting psychosis.
 - **20.** The valentine was decorated with hearts cherubs /cherubim and two cherub.

Numerals, Letters, Symbols, and Words Used as Words, p. 284

- <u>@s /@</u>'s **1.** Do all e-mail addresses have @ in them?
- **2.** The treasure map had two large, black \underline{X} on it.
- **3.** We are reading poetry written in England during the early 1800.
- **4.** Try varying your word choice instead of using so many very in your writing.
- **5.** A are my favorite grade, of course.
- **6.** Are these capital *O*, or are they zeroes?
- **7.** Write \$ at the left of the dollar amounts.
- **8.** Marina had dotted all her *i* with little hearts.
- ums /um's **9.** I counted three *um* as you delivered your oral report.
- **10.** Mark all of the extra large shirts with \underline{XL} .
- **11.** Most of the people in my class were born in the late 80.
- **12.** My aunt thinks that 7 are lucky. ands (and's
- **13.** If you use <u>and</u> between the items in the list, do not use commas.
- **14.** In her typed messages, Leona uses colons and) to form "smiley faces."
- **15.** The *e* in the Healthy Deli's sign are burned out.
- **16.** Gilbert's *hi* are always friendly.
- **17.** How many *l* are in *hullabaloo*?
- **18.** Fake phone numbers are usually formed by using 5 for the first three digits.
- **19.** In your list of goals, use * to begin the items.
- **20.** The URL should begin with three $\underline{\mathbf{w}}$.

Review of Forming Plurals of Nouns B, p. 285

EXERCISE

- **1.** #s [or #'s]
- 2. toothbrushes
- **3.** 1990s [or 1990's]
- **4.** *A*'s
- **5.** reviews [or review's]
- 6. vice presidents
- 7. editors in chief
- 8. parentheses
- **9.** %s [or %'s]
- **10.** *i*'s
- **11.** hello's
- **12.** *Z*s [*or Z*'s]
- **13.** cactuses [or cacti]
- 14. sisters-in-law
- 15. stepchildren
- **16.** *K*s [*or K*'s]
- **17.** 3s [or 3's]
- **18.** @s [or @'s]
- **19.** phenomena [or phenomenons]
- 20. sons-in-law
- **21.** *if*s [*or if*'s]
- **22.** grand juries
- **23.** *s [or *'s]
- **24.** 1700s [or 1700's]
- **25.** *Ps* [*or P*'s]

Numbers, p. 286

EXERCISE

- **1.** 25,000
- 2. twenty-seventh
- **3.** 87
- 4. tenth
- **5.** Five thousand dollars
- **6.** 5
- **7.** 29
- **8.** 25
- **9.** 3:15
- 10. eight hundred

Words Often Confused A, p. 287

EXERCISE

- altogether
 already
 brake
 altar
- 3. effect 13. all together
- **4.** all right
- **5.** already
- 6. capital
- 7. all ready
- 8. affected
- **9.** capitol's
- 10. capital
- Words Often Confused B, p. 288

Exercise

- 1. course
- **2.** Council
- **3.** formerly
- 4. chose
- **5.** counselors
- 6. consul_
- 7. desert
- 8. compliment
- **9.** choose
- 10. course

11. desert

14. alter

15. break

17. effects

19. all ready

20. capital

18. altar

16. altogether

- **12.** formally
- **13.** coarse
- **14.** counsel
- **15.** complement
- **16.** dessert
- **17.** course
- **18.** counselors
- **19.** chose
- **20.** counsel

Words Often Confused C, p. 289

- 1. here
- 2. miner
- **3.** lose
- **4.** it's
- 5. minor
- . .
- **6.** moral
- **7.** hear
- **8.** led
- **10.** lead
- 9. past

- **11.** lead
- 12. morale
- **13.** past
- **14.** loose
- **15.** its
- **16.** lead
- 17. passed
- **18.** its
- **19.** here
- **20.** lose

Original content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Words Often Confused D, p. 290

EXERCISE

- **1.** stationery
- **2.** than
- **3.** Personnel
- **4.** principal
- **5.** stationary
- **6.** piece
- 7. shown
- 8. shone
- 9. principal
- **10.** quite

- 11. Personal
- 12. quiet
- **13.** then
- **14.** than
- 15. peace
- **16.** principles
- 17. stationary
- **18.** personnel
- **19.** then
- 20. peace

Words Often Confused E, p. 291

EXERCISE

- 1. weather
- 2. Whose
- **3.** too
- **4.** whether
- 5. Who's
- 6. waist
- **7.** too
- 8. your
- **9.** to
- 10. their

- **11.** you're
- **12.** two by two
- 13. waste
- **14.** they're
- **15.** You're
- 16. whether
- **17.** who's
- **18.** too
- **19.** your
- **20.** there

Review A: Spelling Rules, p. 292

- 1. surely
- 2. spies
- 3. coming
- 4. irreverent
- **5.** glorious
- **6.** beliefs
- 7. cooperate
- 8. remittance
- **9.** teeth
- **10.** wives
- 11. unnecessary
- 12. argument
- 13. disassemble

- 14. donkeys
- 15. noticeable
- 16. fathers-in-law
- **17.** ninety
- **18.** rodeos
- 19. unlucky
- 20. matches
- 21. disagree
- 22. marrying
- **23.** tomatoes
- **24.** boxes
- **25.** declassify

Review B: Words Often Confused, p. 293

EXERCISE A

1. altar

- 6. lose
- 2. than
- 7. They're 8. shown

- **3.** capital
- **4.** You're
- 5. dessert

9. whether 10. course

EXERCISE B

- personal
- 11. The company president's personnel stationery is engraved with his initials.
- **12.** This tire has a peace of glass embedded in its tread.

altogether

- **13.** The effect of the magic trick was all together astonishing.
- **14.** Whose taking you home after your soccer game?

hear

- **15.** In my oral report, you'll here about Emily Dickinson and the life she led.
- all right **16.** Ms. Randall, is it allright if I go talk to Principal LeFevre now?
- compliments 17. The consul received many complements on his political acumen.
- **18.** During the field trip to the state capital, we took a brake to visit a water park.
- 19. After a noisy day at work, the minor enjoyed the peace and quiet of his cozy home.

they're

20. I packed fruit cups for dessert since their healthier than cookies.

Review C: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused, p. 294

EXERCISE **A**

1.	unnerving
2.	sisters-in-law
3.	politely
4.	continuous
_	

5. *A*'s6. acquaintance

7. disapprove

8. lives9. ninety

10. carrying

EXERCISE B

21. moral

22. succeed

23. It's

12. 7s [or 7's]

11. bereavement

13. potatoes

14. &s [or &'s]

15. chiefs

16. tuning

17. verys [or very's]

18. axes

19. conceiveable

20. patios

24. supersede25. past

Review D: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused, p. 295

EXERCISE **A**

-/\-	10.5271		
1.	desert	5.	formally
2.	Ten thousand	7.	personnel
3.	capital 8	3.	shown
4.	course	9.	twenty-five
5.	one hundred 10).	then

EXERCISE B

11.	mouses,	toothbrushes,	houses	mice

12. monkeys, recede, rooves roofs

13. <u>interceed</u>, immature, chiefs of staff *intercede*

14. children, <u>carefully</u>, bitterly <u>carefully</u>

16. proceed, exceed, <u>conceed</u> <u>concede</u>

17. boxes, useing, trapped <u>using</u>

18. <u>churchs</u>, parentheses, diseases *churches*

20. ordinarily, truly, <u>radicaly</u> <u>radically</u>

Original content Copyright 🕲 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor

Chapter 16: Correcting Common Errors, pp. 296–333

Sentence Fragments and Run-On Sentences A, p. 296

EXERCISE	
1. R	11. F
2. S	12. S
3. R	13. S
4. F	14. F
5. S	15. F
6. S	16. S
7. R	17. R
8. F	18. S
9. F	19. S
10. R	20. R

Sentence Fragments and Run-On Sentences B, p. 297

EXERCISE

1.	F	6.	F
2.	R	7.	S
3.	F	8.	R
4.	F	9.	F
5.	R	10.	R

Revisions will vary.

[1] Bath houses were built by the Romans, for example. [2] Bath houses of the ancient Roman Empire have a well-known history. Often different pools were kept at different temperatures. [3] Some of the Roman bath houses had shops, libraries, and sports facilities. [4] The largest Roman bath house was built when Emperor Caracalla ruled. [5] Wherever the Romans went, they established such bath houses. One in England gave the town its name, Bath. [6] That part of England was a practical location for a bath house because of the area's natural hot springs. [7] Long after the fall of the Roman Empire, English people enjoyed the public pools. [8] Baths and public pools exist in many parts of the world today. They are very popular in Japan. [9] There are many bath houses both in Budapest, Hungary, and in Moscow, the capital of Russia. [10] Pools attract people in any location. They are a good place to chat, do informal business, or just relax.

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 298

EXERCISE A

were
 are
 comes
 appear
 ride
 goes
 are
 comes
 remember
 goes

EXERCISE B

11. *C*

- 12. How do she find the time to practice that much?
- **13.** Both she and her brother wakes up early every morning to practice.
- **14.** Do her brother play an instrument, too?
- **15.** *C*
- **16.** Neither Jessica nor her brother mind the practice time.
- 17. One of their grandmothers—their mother's mother—are a professor of music at the university.
- 18. *C*
- **19.** Have either Jessica or anyone else in her family ever played in public?
- **20.** *C*

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 299

EXERCISE A

- 1. *C*
- **2.** Unless he <u>get</u> up too late, Ralph usually walks to school.
- **3.** Neither Russell nor his brothers has ever been on an airplane.
- **4.** One of his brothers want to be a pilot.
- **5.** *C*
- **6.** They used to be farmers, but neither of farms them farm any longer.

- 7. Miguel, together with Alicia and Heather, has have prepared a slide show.
- **8.** The layout on these pages of the newspaper looks per look too crowded to me.
- 9. *C*
- **10.** Are either the pool in Garrison Park or the pool in Stacy Park open yet?

EXERCISE B

- **11.** The rehearsal will not begin until all of the musicians have taken their seats.
- **12.** One of the trombone players and one of the clarinetists is missing.
- **13.** If seventy-five percent of the eggs hatches, how many chicks will we have?
- **14.** Marissa along with several of her classmates, <u>volunteers</u> at the children's hospital.
- **15.** The price of avocados have varied a lot over the past year.
- **16.** Spaghetti and meatballs is my father's favorite dish.
- **17.** If the majority of the club don't want to meet next month, then we'll cancel the meeting.
- **18.** The highlight of the banquet were the awards.
- **19.** Two fifths of my allowance go into my savings account.
- **20.** How many pieces of chicken do we need for the picnic?

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A, p. 300 EXERCISE A

- 1. Some people say that dogs come when you call (*it*, *them*), but cats take a message and get back to you later.
- **2.** One of the girls in my gym class twisted (*their*, *her*) ankle on the stairs.

- **3.** The members of the concert band will arrive early to tune (*its*, *their*) instruments.
- **4.** How long has the United States had (their, <u>its</u>) present system of government?
- **5.** Every citizen should exercise (their, his or her) right to vote.
- **6.** Anyone who is entering a project in the science fair should set up (*his or her, their*) display.
- 7. If we work together with the ninth-graders to raise the funds (themselves, ourselves), we won't have to ask our parents for so much money for the trip.
- **8.** Reggie and Clara reminded (*themselves*, himself or herself) that the last bus would leave at 6:00 P.M.
- **9.** If they miss that bus, one of them will have to call (*his or her, their*) parents for a ride.
- **10.** Unless we can use the darkroom, we won't be able to develop (*our*, *their*) photographs.

EXERCISE B

- **11.** All three runners from our school have their finished her races.
- **12.** *C*
- **13.** Clay's younger brother and sister always have peanut butter sandwiches in his or her lunches.
- 14. *C*
- **15.** Most of the books looked interesting, but it cost too much.
- **16.** I prefer to use molasses because their taste is stronger and more distinctive.
- 17. *C*
- **18.** Rachel, who shares a room with two of her their sisters, really enjoys her company.

- **19.** According to my father, when he and his brother were young, he both liked spinach.
- **20.** *C* [or A search party located the boys in the morning after they had looked for them all night.]

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B, p. 301

EXERCISE

- 1. them
- 2. his or her
- **3.** themselves
- 4. their
- **5.** its [*or* his *or* her]
- **6.** their
- **7.** it
- 8. their
- **9.** it
- 10. it
- **11.** they
- **12.** them
- **13.** his
- **14.** he
- **15.** them
- 16. his or her
- **17.** their
- **18.** he [*or* they]
- **19.** it [*or* they]
- **20.** it

Pronoun Forms A, p. 302

EXERCISE A

- **1.** me
- **5.** him
- **9.** I

10. she

- **2.** us
- **6.** her
- **7.** who
- she
 they
- **8.** him

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Do you know whom is rehearsing on the stage this afternoon?
- 12. The salesclerk showed my mother and $\frac{1}{4}$ at least ten pairs of shoes.

- **13.** Us tenth-graders are already looking forward to graduation.
- **14.** My family and me have visited over twenty national parks.
- **15.** We were supposed to meet Clarissa and Mario at the movies, but we didn't hear from they in time.
- **16.** The chores were divided among David, Kevin, and he.
- **17.** Whoever wants to work on the mural should wear old clothes on Friday.
- **18.** Take Ms. Simmons and he these papers when you go to the office.
- **19.** The woman who designed the winning float in the parade is her.
- **20.** To who should the students turn in this application, and by when?

Pronoun Forms B, p. 303

- **1.** (*Whom*, *Who*) wants to help make posters this weekend?
- **2.** Please show (us, we) drama students the plans for the new auditorium.
- **3.** Four of my cousins, Rich, Steve, Karen, and (he, him), are older than I am.
- **4.** Nadia couldn't remember whether she had invited Carol and (*she*, *her*) to the party.
- **5.** The most cheerful person in our class is (her, she).
- **6.** The coach asked three members of the team—Nick, Calvin, and (*me*, *I*)—to stay after practice for a few minutes.
- **7.** Next summer, my father will teach my brother and (*I*, *me*) how to drive a car.
- **8.** LaShonda didn't think the tomatoes looked ripe, so she didn't buy any of (*they*, *them*).

- **9.** Either (<u>she</u>, her) or her grandmother does most of the family's grocery shopping.
- **10.** After the children pick up their clothes and make their beds, we will take (*them*, *they*) to the park.
- **11.** What Simone and (<u>she</u>, her) planned to wear to the costume party was a big secret.
- **12.** After we ran into Celie and Carl outside the restaurant, we went inside and sat with (him or her, them) for a few minutes.
- **13.** Are the women who own the landscaping business (*them*, *they*)?
- **14.** (*Them*, *They*) and my brothers have gone to the same summer camp every year.
- **15.** Didn't your grandmother ask you to mow the lawn for (*she*, *her*)?
- **16.** The people you wanted me to call and remind about the meeting are (who, whom)?
- **17.** Kristin, Maxine Lena, and Tom are some of the students (*who*, *whom*) should be asked to help.
- **18.** Tell Nate or (*I*, *me*) the combination to your locker so that one of us can bring your books home for you.
- **19.** After the dance performance, my parents gave flowers to my sister and (*me*, *I*).
- **20.** Please draw Sam and (*I*, *me*) a map to your house.

Clear Pronoun Reference A, p. 304

EXERCISE

Revisions will vary.

- **1.** Before Ann and Miriam started their research, Ann had to sharpen her pencils.
- **2.** Whenever the sky looks that threatening, we can usually expect a bad thunderstorm.
- **3.** The reason that my brothers are always at Neil's house is that they like to jump on the trampoline.

- **4.** The newspaper article did not say when the parade will start.
- **5.** My aunt and uncle will not be able to go to the concert. They told my parents the news.
- **6.** In my school, there is an assembly every Friday morning.
- **7.** C
- **8.** My father told my brother, "You need to get the car washed."
- **9.** If we want to be on time, we'd better leave in the next ten minutes.
- **10.** Julie repeated the instructions to Cynthia until Cynthia was sure that Julie could do the problem.

Clear Pronoun Reference B, p. 305

EXERCISE

Revisions will vary.

- **1.** Because Raul admired sketches of buildings, he thought of being an architect.
- **2.** C
- **3.** The bank apologized for the inconvenience, but this apology was no comfort to the clients in line.
- **4.** Even though rain was predicted, the forecast didn't stop them from counting on this picnic.
- **5.** The specialist and the patient discussed the problems the patient had been having.
- **6.** On the radio, the newscaster said the price of gasoline is going up again.
- **7.** The choir's first selection was a medley of spirituals.
- **8.** The visiting authors talked to the students about the students' writing.
- **9.** Rosanne reminded Matty to choose a recipe that would be easy to prepare.
- **10.** C

Verb Tense, p. 306

EXERCISE A

1. Last Friday night, we had gone to the game after we ate dinner.

- 2. <
- **3.** When we visited the Bahamas last summer, we have seen some amazing fish.
- **4.** Despite the advances that medical science has made, much research into the causes of remains cancer remained to be done.
- 5. If the train leaves at 4:00 P.M., we will have arrived before dark.
- **6.** When she <u>calls</u>, I had already begun to cook dinner.
- I have removed the hinges and sanded the door, so now I was ready to paint.
- 8. The dog had dug a hole under the fence escaped (or had escaped) and has escaped from the yard.
- **9.** Before the alarm <u>begins</u> to ring, I was already up and dressed.
- **10.** On Saturday mornings, we usually eat a late breakfast, run errands, and <u>have done</u> chores.

EXERCISE B

[11] The Basque area in the western Pyrenees has undergone
Mountains will undergo political change in recent times. [12] Even though King Juan
Carlos began to return Spain to democratic rule wanted in 1975, the Basque inhabitants would want independence. [13] In 1980, the people of this unique region are voting overwhelmingly for decided self-government. [14] Spain decides to grant them home rule. [15] The Basque inhabitants, had wanted with their distinct culture and language, want home rule for a long time.

Verb Forms A, p. 307

- **1.** At the bookstore, I <u>choosed</u> a biography and two books of poetry.
- **2.** By the time we reached the station, our train had already leaved.

- **3.** Please sit the vase of flowers in the middle of the dining room table.
- **4.** The team was disappointed because they had losed the game.
- **5.** I could have <u>buyed</u> three new sweaters for the amount of money that jacket cost.
- **6.** She would have enjoyed the campout more if she had brung her scarf and hat.
- **7.** The children slowly <u>drug</u> the toboggan up the hill.
- **8.** I would have <u>ate</u> more of my lunch, but I ran out of time.
- **9.** That old dog has been <u>laying</u> in the shade all day.
- **10.** By tonight, I will have wrote more than ten pages of my paper.
- **11.** I wish my mother had talked to me before she threw my old shoes away.
- **12.** All night long, the wind from the ocean blowed strongly.
- **13.** Before my grandfather could became a U.S. citizen, he had to pass a test.
- **14.** Nicholas and his sister have <u>swam</u> in this lake before.
- **15.** My family <u>seeked</u> advice from our mechanic when we wanted to buy a new car.
- **16.** The horse must have <u>ran</u> away during the night.
- **17.** How many times do you think we have *ridden* rode this bus to school in the past two years?
- **18.** I couldn't hear her very well, but I think that's what she meaned.
- **19.** Ray turned on the news, hoping that his team had winned.

20.	The girls had already se	ent end	the p	oictures	to
	their grandparents.				

Verb Forms B, p. 308

EXERCISE **A**

1. began

6. given

2. driven

- 7. spoke
- **3.** forgotten
- 8. ridden9. sworn
- 4. become5. went
- **10.** got

EXERCISE B

- **11.** <u>rise</u>, raise Every morning, just before the sun <u>rises</u>, our neighbor's rooster begins to crow.
- **12.** *sit*, <u>set</u> I never <u>set</u> my alarm clock.
- 13. <u>lie</u>, lay Even on Sundays, when most people <u>lie</u> in bed a little longer, I am up at the crack of dawn.
- **14.** *lie*, *lay*Last Sunday, I _____ my
 head back down, and covered
 my ears with my pillow.
- **15.** *rise*, <u>raise</u> Our neighbors have <u>raised</u> chickens, ducks, and geese for many years.
- **16.** <u>sit</u>, set Whenever we <u>sit</u> outside in the yard, the chickens and ducks come over to visit.
- **17.** *rise*, <u>raise</u> When my little brother chased one of the geese, it <u>raised</u> its wings and scared him off.
- **18.** <u>sit</u>, set The hens are usually <u>sitting</u> on their eggs.
- **19.** *lie, <u>lay</u>* One of the hens <u>laid</u> her eggs under our porch.

20. *sit*, <u>set</u> Don't <u>set</u> your glass of lemonade on the ground; one of the ducks will drink it.

Comparative and Superlative Forms A, p. 309

EXERCISE A

- 1. longer
- 2. more quickly
- 3. most interesting
- **4.** ready
- **5.** More
- **6.** most aggressive
- 7. many
- 8. better
- **9.** well
- **10.** more

EXERCISE B

- **11.** Believe it or not, the world ocean—called that because all oceans are connected—is *largest* the most largest region on earth.
- **12.** Many find its scenery more spectacularer than any landscape.
- **13.** Learning that seventy percent of the earth's surface is water, people are more respectful fuller of the world ocean.
- **14.** If Mount Everest were submerged in the deepest most deep part of the ocean, its peak would be a mile below the surface.
- **15.** In the future, gooder research of ocean life may help solve the problem of food shortages.

Comparative and Superlative Forms B, p. 310

EXERCISE **A**

- 1. Most
- 2. lowest
- 3. badly
- 4. most delightful
- **5.** better
- **6.** ripe

- 7. more
- 8. more informal
- 9. fewest
- 10. better

EXERCISE B

- **11.** I agree; this is probably the most boringest show I've seen in a long time.
- **12.** We should spend <u>least</u> time watching TV.
- **13.** Well, some programs are a lot <u>more better</u> than this one is.
- **14.** Why are some of the people on television paid mucher money than others?
- **15.** You and I did watch a gooder series about space exploration recently.

Misplaced Modifiers, p. 311

EXERCISE

Revisions may vary.

- **1.** The tourists listened to the old people of the village singing an ancient spiritual song.
- **2.** We watched the sun set over the vast and calm Pacific Ocean.
- **3.** As the runner rounded the bases, the crowd cheered, stomping and whistling loudly.
- **4.** The hurricane that had been stalled out in the ocean finally hit the coast.
- **5.** The man placed a saucer of food in front of the kitten, which was twitching its tail and meowing hungrily.
- **6.** The woman, who had bought two ice cream cones, gave one of the cones to a man.
- **7.** As we walked among the towering and ancient trees, we could hear the songs of the birds.
- **8.** The man ran after his car that was rolling down the hill backwards.
- **9.** The woman comforted the little girl who skinned her knee when she fell off the tricycle.
- **10.** The purple martin house that we put up last fall is now occupied by sparrows.

Dangling Modifiers, p. 312

EXERCISE

Revisions will vary.

- **1.** While we were waiting in line, the music started.
- **2.** Before we could visit my grandparents, the flat tire had to be fixed.
- **3.** To teach someone to drive, a teacher must have patience and a calm manner.
- **4.** When sledding down the big hill near my house, I encountered a rock in the path of the sled.
- **5.** Prepared and well-rested, I found the final exam in geometry to be not at all difficult.
- **6.** The road was blocked by cows that had left through a gate that someone had left open.
- **7.** Determined to unravel the mystery, the detectives re-examined all the clues.
- **8.** As I was hurrying through the crowd as the final whistle blew, the train pulled out of the station.
- **9.** As a stranger in the city, she found the one-way streets and traffic circles confusing.
- **10.** For nomads weary from days of traveling under the hot desert sun, the oasis provided shade and water.

Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers, p. 313

EXERCISE

Revisions will vary.

- **1.** Our supervisor selected two trainees who will assume regular duties after next week.
- **2.** While reaching for the second prize, Pete knocked over the first place trophy.
- **3.** To achieve a higher grade on finals, students would be wise to learn steadily throughout the term.
- **4.** After being left in disrepair, the cabin roof let in rain and wind.
- **5.** On her way to the dentist, Aunt Lyla saw a poodle.
- **6.** Full of self-confidence, Allison posted her report card on the refrigerator.
- **7.** While we were walking the dogs in the park on Sunday afternoon, it began to rain hard.

- **8.** The neighbors admired the historic cottage that had been repainted from top to bottom.
- **9.** Over the loudspeaker, the principal said there was too much trash on the floor.
- **10.** Having filled out the application, Janie scheduled an interview with a supervisor.

Double Negatives and Other Errors, p. 314

EXERCISE A

Revisions may vary.

- 1. We were so tired that we couldn't barely put one foot in front of the other.
- **2.** There weren't no sandwiches left by the time I got through the cafeteria line.
- **3.** That store doesn't accept no employment applications by telephone.
- **4.** She looked for graph paper everywhere in the house, but she didn't find none.
- **5.** Jerome didn't want to read neither of those books for his report.
- **6.** My mother said that we can't go swimming in the river no more.
- 7. Don't tell me you haven't never eaten Italian food!
- **8.** Why didn't no one remember to bring a camera?
- 9. Wasn't nobody available to unlock the gymnasium doors?
- 10. The little boys were so excited that they could couldn't hardly sleep the night before the trip.

EXERCISE B

Revisions may vary.

- 11. Nobody's come up with that idea before.
- **12.** We can't bag any more trash until the trucks haul this load away.
- **13.** Losing her temper, my little sister said, "Nobody can tell me what to do!"

- **14.** Don't you want a second helping of these mashed potatoes?
- **15.** The streets were so confusing that we could scarcely tell which way to turn.

Standard Usage A, p. 315

EXERCISE A

- 1. really; badly
- 6. emigration

2. lend

- 7. teach
- **3.** a lot; fewer
- 8. Whom
- **4.** used; himself
- 9. that; supposed
- **5.** their; inferred
- 10. effected

EXERCISE B

Revisions may vary.

- **11.** She ought not to have turned off the alarm clock, but she was rather tired this morning.
- **12.** The reason she can hardly keep her eyes open is that she stayed up late last night.
- **13.** We probably should have planted fewer flowers and more vegetables this year.
- **14.** A number of students were standing in the hallway as if they had nowhere to go.
- **15.** Unless they catch a later train, they have but two hours to tour the museum.

Standard Usage B, p. 316

EXERCISE A

- 1. The candy and trinkets were divided among between the triplets.
- 2. You will burn up less calories walking than jumping rope.
- **3.** <u>Beside</u> American history and chemistry, Mia studies algebra.
- **4.** Being that it is noon, lunch hour begins now.
- **5.** In Shakespeare's works are many <u>illusions</u> to mythology.
- **6.** That there dog doesn't like the mail carrier.
- **7.** She read where the tickets would go on sale at seven o'clock in the morning.
- **8.** He would of called, but he was already late.

Doesn't

- **9.** Don't he know that the moon affects the tides?
- **10.** Do you think you can get this strawberry jam stain off of my shirt?

EXERCISE B

Revisions may vary.

[11] I would not have believed what my friend Ike wore to his job interview if I had not seen him with my own eyes. [12] Besides a tuxedo with plaid lapels, he wore a top hat with a bent brim. [13] He looked as if he might have been going to a prom during the days of Charles Dickens! [14] I told him that wearing that kind of clothing for an interview at the ice cream shop could backfire somewhat, but my warning had no effect on him. [15] I hope he learned his lesson, but he is still looking everywhere for a place to earn money this summer.

Capitalization A, p. 317

EXERCISE A

- 1. jean lives with her family in the hancock armsapartments on forty-fifth street.
- **2.** mom and dad's business advisor, uncle (raymond, developed the advertising campaign.
- **3. Greta read me an article about buddhist** monasteries in tibet.
- **4.** Most passenger trains in the us, such as the(sunset(l)mited, are run by(a)mtrak.
- **5.** Everyone in the cology Cub voted for a trip to the atlantic coast.
- 6. Classes at thubman high school begin (a) gust 30, but the next monday, (b) bor day, is a holiday.
- 7. "I asked dad," reggie began, turning to look at(frank, "if he could take us fishing at(lake (jefferson."

- **8.** Visitors to vosemite and vellowstone mational parks have the opportunity to see some of the most beautiful areas of the american west.
- **9.** Your parents or grandparents probably remember exactly where they were when they heard that president john (f) kennedy was assassinated on november 22, 1963.
- **10.** Every year on halloween, our radio station replays or son Welles's adaptation of hg Wells's novel The War of the Worlds.

EXERCISE B

[11] The gracy city gazette always apologizes for its errors. [12] The article we printed on (tuesday, 'On with the (festival!" was not entirely accurate. [13] We misquoted the dates for the peaches and ream festival. [14] a parade will kick off festivities on (july 29. [15] Gracy City Council members will lead the way to the norwegian Pioneer memorial monument in lincoln park. [16] They will also hold groundbreaking ceremonies for the new gracy memorial hospital after the parade. [17] Festival activities will continue through the third of August. [18] We hope this clears up any inaccurate information printed by this Newspaper. [19] Please accept editor wylie's apologies for earlier errors. [20] Most of all, don't forget to join your neigh-

bors for all the **S**ummer fun!

Capitalization B, p. 318

- 1. Mom and dad always watch meet the press and washington week in review on Sunday mornings.
- **2.** Simms & Sons, on Fifty-Seventh Street, is a Company that specializes in restaurant furniture.

- **3.** In *The Westing game*, a novel by ellen raskin, the lyrics of "America The Beautiful" provide clues to the Mystery.
- 4. "Ladies and Gentlemen," the speaker began, "we are gathered here to let the Mayor and City Council know exactly how we feel about the plans to put a Matural Cas pipeline through our neighborhoods."
- **5.** In england, boxing day, the day after christmas, is the traditional day to exchange gifts.
- **6.** That airline does not fly to New Mexico's ¢apital santafe.
- 7. Our neighbor, dr. pat kelly, has aph. d. degree in merican history, not an md degree.
- **8.** The university of texas at austin and the university of michigan in an arbor have Tens of Thousands of students.
- 9. does mr. Reaton expect us to read this whole chapter, "the Westward expansion," in one night?
- **10.** I didn't see that Program last thesday because our town does not have an not have an affiliate.
- **11.** The audience waited while senator bates organized her notes and adjusted the microphone.
- 12. The cats, persephone and emeter, were named after characters in Ancient Greek Myths.
- **13.** The north star, polaris, appears to be almost directly above the north pole.
- **14.** When you reach the Intersection of broadway and san pedro street, turn right, or east.
- **15.** The **Vor** isn't working, so I guess we'll have to listen to **Gos**.

- **16.** Send your film to po. box 11122 seattle, @a 99002; you'll receive your pictures and a free roll of film in about **T** wo **W**eeks.
- 17. Does the museum of modern art have any Summer internships for High School students?
- 18. Unless you live in the Southern hemisphere, you won't be familiar with Constellations such as the Southern cross and centaurus.
- **19.** The defense lawyer refused to comment about judge mewhirter's ruling.
- **20.** "In case of an Emergency," the notice read, "Please call 911 to reachems or the police."

Commas A, p. 319

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underscored.

- **1.** Do you want to walk to school tomorrow morning, or should we sleep a little later and catch the bus?
- **2.** This recipe calls for nuts, raisins, and chocolate chips.
- **3.** On Tuesday, October 24, at 4:00 P.M., the junior class will assemble in the auditorium.
- **4.** No I appreciate the invitation but I've already made plans for Saturday night.
- **5.** Whenever I see a rainbow, I recall my grandmother's stories about leprechauns and their pots of gold.
- **6.** That man, Jesse's uncle, works for one of the airlines in Dallas, Texas.
- Ms. Branter, who teaches physical education classes, coaches the soccer and volleyball teams.
- **8.** Many people celebrated the end of the millennium on December 31, 1999, but others insisted upon waiting until December 31, 2000
- **9.** He wanted to go skateboarding with his friends, of course, but he hadn't finished his chores.

- **10.** According to her sister, Marty is applying to Georgia Tech, Texas A&M, and LSU.
- **11.** That was my best broad jump so far, Dave.
- **12.** My grandmother, who is over seventy, gets up every morning at six o'clock, walks three miles, and then goes for a swim at the YMCA pool.
- **13.** Unfortunately, one of our scheduled speakers, Dr. F. E. Maxwell, Jr., can't make it today.
- **14.** He apparently missed his connection and is now waiting in the airport in Raleigh. North Carolina, until the airline can find him a seat on another flight.
- **15.** The crisp, clear fall weather was invigorating.
- **16.** Celie, despite her cold, insisted on running in the 10K race.
- 17. "Elias, we don't have enough money to buy another car," his father explained, "and, unless you save money, you couldn't afford the gasoline, not to mention the insurance."
- **18.** Imelda and Esmeralda, my twin nieces, will start school next year in the fall.
- **19.** The rehearsals are scheduled for Wednesday, December 6, and Friday, December 8.
- **20.** After we finish our exams in June, we're all planning a trip to the beach. [*or* After we finish our exams, in June...]

Commas B, p. 320

Optional commas are underscored.

- 1. Camila/and her mother, Sra. Alcocer, will be preparing all the food for the party.
- 2. We have games this Friday and Saturday, next Friday and Saturday, and, I believe, the following/Friday as well.
- **3.** According to the weather forecast, the storm/will reach our area in the middle of the night, sometime after midnight.

- **4.** Cassie's address is 1339 Milam Street. Apartment 12-B, and her phone number is 604-7490.
- **5.** Although he is almost never late for school he overslept/this morning.
- **6.** Next weekend I am going camping with Nate, my best friend/since elementary school.
- 7. On Thursday and Friday the performances of Fiddler on the Roof will begin at seven o'clock, but on Saturday the curtain goes up at eight o'clock.
- **8.** Please take this flyer to the front office ask Ms. Jameson, to approve it and make thirty copies for the class.
- **9.** My dogs, whose names are Wolfie and Bear, are huge but gentle.
- **10.** The concert, despite the fact that all the tickets were sold out, was cancelled.
- **11.** Fortunately, we will be able to get our money back, but the process will take several weeks.
- **12.** Mom, if you have a few minutes, could you please show me how to sew this button on?
- **13.** My grandparents, who became U.S. citizens only a few years ago, never forget to vote.
- **14.** In the dim_• flickering light of the candles_• the children's eyes shone/as they opened their gifts.
- "Everyone in the class," Mr. Martin said, "except for Nelson, Glenn, and Christine, has turned in a permission slip for the field trip."
- **16.** The Customer Service Department, I believe, has an 800-number, so the call will be free.

- **17.** I have classes/at 9:00 and 10:30 lunch at 12:05 and a meeting after school today.
- **18.** None of the materials on that cart, including the magazines, may be checked out.
- **19.** She brought a notebook/and a tape recorder to the interview/she had scheduled.
- **20.** There is one item/in that catalog, item number 7767, the rain jacket, that would be very useful.

Semicolons and Colons, p. 321

EXERCISE Colons may be substituted for semicolons in items 4, 8, and 9 if the word following the colon is capitalized.

- 1. The flight leaves at 1:30 P.M.; it arrives in Paris at 7:45 A.M. the next day.
- **2.** When you are at the office supply store, please pick up the following supplies for my science fair projects a tri-fold display board, two clear report covers, and a package of graph paper.
- 3. Some of the relatives at my family reunion came from as far away as Honolulu, Hawaii. Anchorage, Alaska: and Portland, Maine.
- **4.** You can't buy both the boots and the shoes you'll have to choose one or the other.
- 5. Bettina introduced us to everyone in her family: her mother and father, who came to the United States from Germany when they were in their 20's; her brother Ralf, who owns a catering business; and her sister Margaret, who is still in elementary school.
- **6.** The castle was begun in 1294 and occupied off and on for the next two centuries; it was conquered and burnt about 1500.
- **7.** My brother plays the pianos I take guitar and flute lessons.
- **8.** My father is a man of many talents he is an accomplished amateur golfer, an avid gardener, and a published poet.
- **9.** Aaron seldom watches televisions he says he has better things to do.

10. Please look in the cupboard and tell me whether we need any of these items from the grocery stores tomato soup, peanut butter, macaroni, vegetable oil, and crackers.

Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A, p. 322

EXERCISE A

- **1.** "What skating party?" asked Nadia, turning to face her friend. "When? Where?"
- 2. "Let me look at my notes," said Rita, "and I'll tell you all the details."
- **3.** Rita continued, **6**Oh, here they are! This backpack has so many pockets that I can never find anything.
- **4. ••**You were saying . . . ? •• prompted Nadia.
- **5. ***Everyone should meet at Marilyn's house at four o'clock on Saturday, Rita said.
- **6. ••**Unfortunately, Rita, **••** said Nadia with a sigh, **••**there's a little problem. **••**
- 7. "What kind of problem?" asked Rita."The rink isn't expensive, and you can rent skates there."
- **8.** Nadia sighed again and said in a whisper, "I don't know how to skate."
- **9.** "Oh, that's all right!" Rita said. "You'll catch on fast, and we can all help you."
- **10.** ••Do you really think so?•• asked Nadia. ••Well then, I can't wait!••

EXERCISE B

- **11. "Well,** let me see. I'm sure this is the right direction," said Cecily, looking at her compass.
- 12. "I think it was about 10:00 P.M.," said the witness. "I know that because he [the defendant] always walked his dogs around the block at that time."
- **13.** Only the sopranos, not I, are able to reach the high notes in *The Star-Spangled Banner.*

- **14.** During President Clinton's first term in office (1993–1997), the Republicans won control of the U.S. House of Representatives.
- **15.** Everyone in Ms. Cranfield's literature class has to read Shakespeare's <u>Julius Caesar</u>.

Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation B, p. 323

Some marks of punctuation may vary.

EXERCISE

- [1] "Nothing much, I guess," said Carl.
- ¶ [2] ••Nothing at all? [3] Not one single thing? [4] You must have done something!
- ¶ [5] "Well, the basement flooded, and we spent most of the weekend mopping up water," said Carl.
- ¶ [6] "You call that nothing!" exclaimed Kevin. [7] "How did that happen?"
- ¶ [8] "The plumber—he's my brother-in-law—was working on some old cast-iron pipes," Carl began, "and he forgot to shut off one of the water lines. [9] You wouldn't have believed the mess! [10] There was a foot, maybe even two feet, of water in the basement by the time we shut the water off."

Apostrophes, p. 324

Exercise

- 1. She won to be able to come with us to tonight adnce performance.
- **2.** In a little over two hours, we can be packed and ready to leave for Grandma Jones's house.
- **3.** We shouldn't have tried to take this test without a good night's sleep.
- **4.** Didn't I tell you we should have gone to sleep before two o'clock in the morning?
- **5.** In the late 1990s [*or* 1990*s], many Americans bought large cars, even though smaller cars* mileage ratings were better.

- **6.** The Gonzalezes ranch is in New Mexico, near its border with Texas.
- **7.** The newspaper's political editor came to the journalism classes' awards banquet.
- **8.** We'll meet at the Smiths' house; then Sara's dad will take us to the movies.
- **9.** The company's president will take you to the conference room on the building's second floor.
- **10.** That s an incredibly long kite tail; it s at least forty or fifty feet long!
- **11.** Carla's family gave the landlord one month's notice before they moved out of the apartment.
- **12.** Don't you agree it's a beautiful morning?
- **13.** My mother always says, "Mind your *p*'s and *q*'s," but she can't tell me the origin of the saying.
- **14.** Well, my father's favorite saying is "Cross all your *t*'s and dot all your *i*'s."
- **15.** Three schools representatives to the District Student Council met to discuss their concerns about the school board's plans.
- **16.** The dogs leashes are on a hook in the closet; Gus's leash is the long green one.
- **17.** Now s the time to ask for your parents help.
- **18.** We'll all go together in Nathan's brother's car.
- **19.** The road's sharp curves and potholes make it an inexperienced driver's worst nightmare.
- **20.** He's just gotten his learner's permit, and his sister's husband is teaching him to drive.

All Marks of Punctuation Review A, p. 325

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underscored. Answers to sentences 4 and 5 may vary.

 Key West, the last of the Florida Keys, is connected to the mainland by the Overseas Highway.

- 2. In 1905 when Henry Flagler (1830–1913) decided to extend the railroad to Key West, Key West was Florida's most populated city.
- **3.** It was also the United States closest deepwater port to the proposed Panama Canal
- **4.** During the seven-year-long construction period, hurricanes threatened the project several times, at one time over four thousand men were working on the rail route.
- **5.** Many native-born Key Westers (a person born on the two-by-four-mile island is called a <u>Conch</u> [pronounced **konk**]) are descended from early residents who salvaged shipwrecks.
- **6.** When the cry, "Wreck ashore!" went up, everyone would rush out to the wreck to see what could be salvaged.
- 7. One of Key West's well-known residents was the author Ernest Hemingway (1899-1961), who owned a house on the island from 1931 until his death.
- **8.** Today, the Hemingway House is among the island's most popular tourist attractions.
- 9. While he lived in Key West, Hemingway wrote several novels, including For Whom the Bell Tolls, and short stories, such as "The Short Happy Life of Francis Macomber."
- **10.** Hemingway owned nearly fifty cats; today's visitors still look for those cats' descendants, especially the six-toed ones, which are easy to spot.

All Marks of Punctuation Review B, p. 326 EXERCISE

Optional commas are underscored.

[1] 1420 Winston Ave., Apt. 12

- [2] Gwyneth, TX 77091
- [3] February 10, 2009
- [4] Mysteries Unlimited Club 4000 B Academy Blvd• Denver• CO 80602
- [5] Dear Sir or Madam:
- [6] Since June 10, 2002, I have been a member of Mysteries Unlimited. [7] In your last club newsletter, you invited members to send in their original mysteries for possible publication. [8] I have been writing stories for several years. but I've never submitted anything for publication• [9] I m enclosing a copy of my story "Broken Glasses." [10] The story's setting is Exeter, England. I grew up there, so the setting is depicted accurately! [11] A cabdriver disappears without a trace, except for his broken glasses. The narrator is Glenda, a self-confident schoolgirl about my age who lives across the street from the missing driver. [12] After finding the glasses in the street, Glenda pursues additional clues: loud music, screeching tires, and flashlights at midnight. [13] Although she is painfully shy, she interviews at least twentyfive people—friends, neighbors, and customers of the cabdriver—in her effort to find him. [14] She contacts the police, of course, but most of them—she does make one friend on the police force—dismiss her well-founded worries as the product of an over-active imagination. [15] Aren⁹t they embarrassed when the girl solves the mystery? [16] Can you guess how? [17] By the way, the story contains no violence or weapons.
- [18] Please consider publishing my original story in your annual anthology Best Mysteries.

[19] I have enclosed a self-addressed, stamped envelope for your reply.

[20] Sincerely,

Francine Gomez

Spelling A, p. 327

EXERCISE A

- 1. If you finish early, procede to the next section of the test immediately.
- **2.** Either you <u>believe</u> in the <u>movement</u> or you don't.
- **3.** City taxes rarely go for building music studioes
- 4. Insect larvae are sometimes found underneath leafs.
- **5.** The bookkeepper has an accurate record of the bank deposits.
- **6.** After she read the poem, an appreciation of literary beauty siezed her.
- **7.** Scientists often report any modifications to their theories.
- **8.** Roofs in those countrys are made of natural materials.
- **9.** Those youngsters' manners are aweful, and they are always disobeying their parents.
- **10.** Don't get in an argument about whose achievement was the greatest.

Exercise B

- overrated 11. I think that television show is overated.
- **12.** The exhibit contained artifacts from an ancient buryal site.
- **13.** My brother's collection of pennys is truly amazina amazeing.
- dissatisfied **14.** He was disatisfied with the service he had received at the restaraunt.

- Unfortunately
- 15. Unfortunatly, I don't understand these formulas (or formulae) chemical formula.
- *questionnaire* **16.** The <u>questionaire</u> was the 4th one she had answered in as many days.
- **17.** The <u>blizzard</u> knocked down the power lines and blanketted the town in snow.
- *Twelfth graders* **18.** Twelvth-grader's in our school take a class trip every spring.
- sisters-in-law **19.** My <u>sister-in-laws</u> are both <u>sopranoes</u>, and my brothers are <u>bass's</u>.
- **20.** At the zoo, I especially enjoyed seeing the deer [or C] wolfs, the kangaroos, and the deers.

Spelling B, p. 328

Exercise

- **1.** When he forgets to cross his ts, they look just like his *l*s. satisfying
- **2.** After a <u>satisfiing</u> lunch, we all took a nap.
- **3.** Sharon was <u>dismaied</u> when she realized she had missed the rehearsal on Wednesday.
- great-grandfather **4.** My great grandfather founded his business shorttly after he came to the United States.
- 5. Let me check my calendar; I beleive I have a practice that afternoon.
- **6.** There are <u>basicly</u> only two <u>solutiones</u> to this problem.
- **coughing** days

 7. She had been coughhing for dais and her voice sounded hoarse.
- winner **8.** His costume was the winer for "Best Character from History."
- **9.** Please post <u>notics</u> on the bulletin boards so that everyone will know about tonight's meeting.
- conscientious **10.** Wayne is a <u>consciencious</u> student; he is always studiing
- 11. The batter should have reachd the consistency of sour cream or yogurt.

- **12.** My family tried to get a room at the motel, but there were no vacancies but there were no vacancys.
- **13.** The superintendent of schools has substantial teaching experience.
- **14.** In the part of the county that is outside the city, the sheriff is the cheif law enforcement officer.
- **15.** I received a pamphlet explaining the available summer programs available for high school students.
- **16.** An extraordinary traffic jam outside the stadium <u>caused</u> us to be late for the tournament.
- SadlySaddly, he has a tendency to exaggerate things thinges.
- **18.** As the hot-air <u>balloones</u> ascended, the <u>cheered</u> crowd <u>cheerred</u>.
- **19.** I have looked in every <u>concievable</u> place, but I still can't find my journal.
- **20.** Despite the <u>freezeing</u> temperatures, the ski <u>unforgettable</u> trip was <u>unforgetable</u>.

Words Often Confused, p. 329

EXERCISE A

1. route

6. morale

2. minor

- 7. waste8. whether
- **3.** personnel**4.** plains
- **9.** capitol

- 5. peace
- 10. coarse

EXERCISE B

- **11.** He wasn't aware that the moon <u>effects</u> the tides on earth.
- **12.** One of this political party's <u>principals</u> is that all meetings should be open to the public.
- **13.** The motion to except the engineering company's contract past unanimously.
- 14. *C*

- **15.** She was <u>formally</u> an attorney in private practice, but now she owns a bookstore.
- *They're* **16.** Their trying to give you a complement.
- **17.** Whose planning to submit an application to the personal department?
- **18.** In the dark tunnel, the lights on the minors' helmets shown eerily.
- **19.** The path <u>lead</u> to a <u>quite</u> picnic area.
- **20.** Did you here the guide's outline of the history of the capital building?

Spelling and Words Often Confused, p. 330 EXERCISE

- **1.** My grandparents recently sold the house forty-two they had owned for <u>42</u> years.
- **2.** They have all ready packed everything; the house looks deserted.
- **3.** Occasionally, I here sirens in the night.
- **4.** In the <u>passed</u>, she had always enjoyed reunions family <u>re-unions</u>.
- **5.** You should try a peace of the banana bread; it's really delicious!
- **6.** Everytime we loose a game, our moral plummets.
- **7.** Days in the desert sun must have <u>effected</u> his thinking.
- **8.** During the bicycle maintenance class, we were shone how to adjust the breaks and how to fix a flat.
- 9. You're parents don't like to waist money.
- **10.** In my experience, surprise partys are alot of fun.
- **11.** Last Tuesday, our state senator gave us a personal personnel tour of the capitol.
- **12.** The commencement ceremony will include alumnus a speech by a famous alumni.

- **13.** On the 2nd Wednesday of every month, the neighborhood nieghborhood association meets.
- **14.** Do any of there friends or acquaintences work for that company?
- **15.** At the end of they're field trip to the museum, all the sophomores bought souvenirs.
- **16.** A single, magnificent painting of a pack of wolves wolfs was the dominant object in the room.
- **17.** One of our requirements for graduation is a course grammar coarse.
- **18.** Did she <u>loose</u> her sunglasses or merely <u>misplace</u> missplace them?
- **19.** One characteristic of many <u>successful</u> <u>self-confidence</u> athletes is <u>self confidence</u>.
- 20. It's all right lts allright; I know you must have been extremely extremly fatigued after the race.

Review A: Usage, p. 331

EXERCISE A

- 1. Thailand, unlike many other Asian countries, were never a European colony.
- **2.** For 15,000 years Aboriginal Australians have used the boomerang to hunt for its food.
- **3.** Tigers that stalk humans is rare.
- **4.** A designer of Italian automobiles often has formal art training in their background.
- **5.** *C*
- 6. Sue don't know that the Hebrew word shalom means "peace."
- 7. Martin Luther King, Jr., advocated non-violent action to make a nation correct their injustices.
- **8.** Some of the inhabitants of Quebec <u>speaks</u> French and English equally well.

- 9. (
- **10.** No one chose to write their report about the brief war between England and Argentina in 1982.

EXERCISE B

Revisions will vary.

- **11.** Because I plan to go into engineering, I need to have excellent math skills.
- **12.** The children watched the fire engine speed by, its sirens blaring and its lights flashing.
- **13.** After counting all the leftovers, we deduced that more apples than oranges had been eaten.
- **14.** The youngest boy looked out his bedroom window at the first star, dim but twinkling.
- **15.** That was one of the most poignant and touching stories I've ever read.

Review B: Mechanics, p. 332

EXERCISE

Corrections will vary.

- **1.** "What in the world are truffles?" Kim asked.
- 2. "Well," her friend said, "they re a fungus that looks a little like mushrooms. They grow underground, and some people consider them a great delicacy."
- **3.** Wanting to know more, Kim asked, "How do truffle hunters know where the truffles are?"
- **4.** "Not easily," answered Kanisha. "In France pigs are trained to sniff them out."
- 5. "I suppose," Kim said, shaking her head, "that a handful of truffles must be incredibly expensive."
- **6.** Kanisha had also learned the following about truffles: that they usually grow around the roots of trees, especially oaks; that they may be as small as a pea or as large as an orange; and that they first became popular near the end of the *fifteenth* century.
- **7.** The main French *truffières* (truffle grounds) are in Périgord and Vaucluse.

- **8.** Some *p*eople are sensitive to the scent of truffles. *O*thers look for other signs—small yellow flies that hover over the ground, for example—that truffles are below the surface.
- **9.** Truffles, a member of the genus Tuber, have been prized as food since ancient times!
- **10.** If you re ever offered the chance to eat truffles, even a tiny piece, try them. They re wonderful!

Review C: Usage and Mechanics, p. 333

EXERCISE

Revisions will vary.
January 13, 2009

Dear Marcy,

It's been a long time since I have written an old-fashioned letter, but I wanted to use the stationery my grandmother gave me for my birthday. Next time I'll e-mail you; that's a lot faster.

While <code>I</code> waiting for the rain to stop, writing a letter to a friend is a good way to get back in touch. I ve been fine. How are you doing? All of your classmates, particularly Renata, Christopher, and Sandra, said to say hi. Renata told me to tell you—I m quoting her exactly—"Save a place for me at the University of New Mexico." Maybe you two could be roommates.

Guess what? Ms. Jimenez (she's the teacher in Biology II) is from New Mexico, and she says the Sandia Mountains are absolutely beautiful, especially at sunrise and sunset. Maybe I'll try to visit you someday and see them for myself. Until then, send me some pictures.

Are you still *planning* to visit during the holidays? Let me know—we'll have a party! Always *your friend*,

Lynn